## ON CERTAIN VARIETIES

OF

## METABELIAN GROUPS.

by

R.A. BRYCE

# A thesis presented to the Australian National University for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy in the Department of Mathematics. 

## STATEMENT

The results presented in this thesis are my own except where stated otherwise.

> Nibuyce
R.A. Bryce.

## PREFACE

During the time that the work for this thesis was done, I held a Commonwealth Post-graduate Award, which was generously supplemented by the Australian National University.
iiy thanks are due to Dr. L.G. Kovács, my Supervisor during the past two and a half years. I am most grateful to him for his friendly criticism and encouragement, and his readiness to discuss my problems.

I thank Professor S.J. Tobin, who acted as my Supervisor for six months during Dr. Kovács' absence overseas, and Mrs. F.A. Wickland who typed the stencils for this thesis. Finally, my wife deserves my thanks for her forbearance over the last few months.

## CONTENTS

CHAPTER ..... 0
0.1 Introduction ..... 1
0.2 Notation and terminology ..... 5
CHAPTER 1 Varieties of split-groups ..... 8
1.1 Split-groups ..... 8
1.2 Alternative formulation ..... 13
1.3 Freeness of split-groups ..... 17
1.4 Split-words ..... 25

1. 5 Sp1it-varieties ..... 31
1.6 Examples of split-varieties ..... 36
1.7 Products of split-varieties ..... 41
CHAPTER 2 Miscellaneous Results ..... 47
2.1 Lattices of split-varieties ..... 47
2.2 The bivariety $\stackrel{A}{=}$ ..... 49
CHAPTER 3 Critical bigroups in $\underset{\underline{A}}{\text { A }}$ ..... 54
3.1 Critical split--groups ..... 54
3.2 Non-nilpotent critical bigroups in $\underset{=}{A}$ ..... 58
3.3 The criticality of G ..... 65
3.4 The bigroup F* ..... 68
CHAPTER 4 A finite basis theorem ..... 76
4.0 Introduction ..... 76
4.1 A $\circ A_{n}$ : reduction to the case $n=p^{V}$ ..... 76
4.2 Preliminary lemmas ..... 80
4.3 Proof of (4.2.3) ..... 94
4.4 Descending chain condition for $A_{\mathrm{m}} \circ$ A ..... 105
CHAPTER 5 Further results and applications ..... 111
5.1 Further results on critical bigroups in $A \circ$ A ..... 112
5.2 The bivarieties $A_{m} \circ A_{n}$ ..... 118
5.3 The bivarieties $A_{m}^{\circ} \stackrel{A}{=}$ ..... 131
 ..... 143
5.5 Applications to metabelian varieties ..... 150
REFERENCES ..... 162

## CHAPTER 0

### 0.1 Introduction

The problem of classifying varieties of metabelian groups has attracted several authors recently, and partial results have been obtained. For example, Brisley [7] and Weichsel [12] classified all varieties of metabelian p -groups of class at most $\mathrm{p}-1$, and Newman [14] determined all subvarieties of ${ }_{p} \alpha^{A}{ }_{p}$. Neman [15] has also classified all metabelian varieties of exponent 4. Getting away from locally nilpotent situations, Cossey [4] classified the varieties of metabelian A-groups, that is, varieties of metabelian groups whose Sylow subgroups are all abelian; in particular this includes all subvarieties of the product varieties $A_{m} A_{n}$, where $m, n$ are coprime.

The work in the present thesis derives from an attempt to classify the subvarieties of $A_{m} A_{n}$, without restriction on $m, n$. The main result is a common extension of the results of Newman and Cossey mentioned above. Call two integers $m, n$ nearly coprime if $p \mid m$ implies $\mathrm{p}^{2} \dagger_{\mathrm{n}}$. We give a complete classification of the subvarieties of $\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{n}}$ whenever $m, n$ are nearly coprime; in particular this covers the case ${ }_{=p}^{A} A_{p q}$, where $p, q$ are distinct primes. The method can be outlined as follows. A subvariety $\underline{\underline{V}}$ of $A_{m} A_{n}$ can be written $V=\mathbb{U}_{V}^{V}, V=L N$ where $\underset{\approx}{\mathbb{U}}$ is generated by the non-nilpotent critical groups in $\underline{\underline{V}}$, and
where $\bigvee_{=}^{\mathbb{V}}$ is generated by the nilpotent critical groups in $\stackrel{V}{ }$. Now ${ }^{-}$LiN is locally nilpotent, and is covered by Newman's result, so we say no more about it, and concentrate on $\xlongequal[=]{U} . G$ is a non-nilpotent, metabelian, critical group, its Fitting subgroup $F$ is a sylow p-subgroup for some prime $p$, the derived group $G^{\prime}$ is contained in $F$, and $F$ is complemented in $G$ by a cycle of order $t$, say. Let $p^{\alpha}$ be the exponent of $G^{\prime}$. Then $G \in A_{m} A_{n}$ implies $p^{\alpha}|m, \quad t| n$, and
(*)

$$
\operatorname{var} G=(\operatorname{var} F) A_{t} \wedge A_{p}^{A} \alpha A_{n},
$$

at least for $m, n$ nearly coprime. The non-nilpotent critical groups in $\underset{V}{V}$ fall into classes determined by the exponents of their derived groups and the orders of their Fitting factor groups; and in a similar manner to (*), each such class generates a variety of the form
where $\underset{=}{W}$ is the p-power exponent variety generated by the Fitting subgroups of the critical groups concerned, and $\underset{=}{U}$ is canonically the join of these varieties. This situation is described in Chapter 5.

In proving (*) I have had to introduce varietal concepts which are not concerned with varieties of groups as such. These are the concepts of 'split-group' and 'variety of split-groups'; a split-group is a group with a specified semi-direct decomposition. If $G$ is a
non-nilpotent, metabelian critical group as above, then $G^{\prime} \leq F$ and F splits over $G^{\prime}$; thus $F$ may be thought of as a split-group $F$, and if, in formula (*), one interprets each side as a statement about split-varieties, it is true without extra conditions on $m, n$. When $m, n$ are nearly coprime, there is an accidental, very close, relation between the variety generated by $F$ quâ group, and the variety generated by $F$ quâ split-group. In the case $m, n$ not nearly coprime, there is no such close relationship in general, and formula (*) is not true as a statement about varieties of groups; even an apparently more restrictive formula fails to hold.

The split-group idea is capable of wider use than this classification problem. In Chapter 4, for example, we prove a finite basis theorem for certain varieties of split-groups, which, by way of application, shows that certain varieties of metabelian groups have a finite basis. Although this is only a special case of D.E. Cohen's finite basis theorem for all metabelian varieties [16], it seems worth doing not only as a demonstration of the strength of the split-group technique, but also for the sake of the additional information obtained about the varieties involved, especially as [16] gives no varietal side results at all. While a complete classification is lacking, even for subvarieties of the product varieties of ${ }_{=}^{A} P_{p}^{A} \alpha_{q}$, enough information is obtained to answer several questions concerning the lattice of subvarieties of certain

An $A_{n}$, for example, questions of distributivity of the lattice of these varities.

It was pointed out to me by L.G. Kovács, that split-groups of species 2 (that is, groups with a specified decomposition as a semidirect product of two groups) could be re-interpreted as group pairs, in the terminology of B.I. Plotkin's recent book [19]. In an appendix to that book Plotkin defined varieties of pairs and extended to these some constructions from the theory of varieties of universal algebras. Thus it seems that for split-groups of species 2, some basic definitions and results of a general nature could be obtained by specializing Plotkin's theory. Instead we show that all varieties of splitgroups can be interpreted as varieties of universal algebras and so our fundamentals are derived directly from the theory of varieties of universal
algebras. However if our results for the case of species 2 are thought of as results in certain varieties of group pairs, they are (so far as we know), the first detailed results on specific varieties of group pairs.

### 0.2 Notation and terminology.

For results relating to varieties of algebras we refer the reader to B.H. Neumann [21], and for results and notation relating specifically to varieties of groups, to Hanna Neumann [3].

We differ from [3] only in writing $H \leq G$ if $H$ is a subgroup of $G$. If $H$ is a proper subgroup of the group $G$, that is $H \neq G$, we write $H<G$. If $H$ is normal in $G$ we write $A \leq G$. If $G$ is generated by the subsets $H_{1}, \ldots,{ }_{r}{ }_{r}$ then $G=\left\langle H_{1}, \ldots, H_{r}\right\rangle$.

If $G$ is a group and $x, y \in G$ denote $y^{-1} x y$ by $x^{y}$, and the commutator $x^{-1} x^{y}$ by $[x, y]$. Commutators of higher weight are defined as left-normed: if $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n} \in G$ and $\left[x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n-1}\right]$ has been defined, then

$$
\left[x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right]=\left[\left[x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n-1}\right], x_{n}\right]
$$

Define $[x, 0 y]=x$, and for $r \geq 0,[x,(r+1) y]=[[x, r y], y]$.

If $H, K$ are subgroups of $G$, then $[H, K]$ is the subgroup generated by the elements $[\mathrm{h}, \mathrm{k}]$, $h \in \mathrm{H}, \mathrm{k} \in \mathrm{K}$. The derived group $\mathrm{G}^{\text { }}$ of G is $[G, G]$. A group $G$ is metabelian if $\left[G^{r}, G^{i}\right]=1$, where we use 1 to denote the identity of the group as well as the trivial subgroup. The normal closure of $H$ in $G$ is denoted by $H^{G}$.

The terms of the lower central series of $G$ are defined inductively by

$$
G_{(1)}=G, \quad G(c)=[G(c-1), G] ;
$$

thus $G_{(2)}=G^{\prime}$. A group $G$ is nilpotent of class $c$ if $G_{(c+1)}=1, \quad G(c) \neq 1$.

The centralizer of a subgroup $H$ of $G$ is denoted by $C_{G}(H)$ and the centre of $G$ by $Z(G)$. The Fitting subgroup of a finite group $G$, the largest normal, nilpotent subgroup of $G$, is denoted by FIG).

A finite group with a unique minimal normal subgroup is called monolithic, and the unique minimal normal subgroup is called the monolith. The socle of a finite group $G$ is the subgroup generated by all minimal normal subgroups of $G$, and is denoted by $\sigma G$.

In late chapters, Chapter 4 in particular, many well-known commutator identities will be used without comment. The ones used are listed here. In any group $G$ the following are identities:

$$
\begin{aligned}
{[x, y z] } & =[x, z][x, y][x, y, z] \\
{[x y, z] } & =[x, z][x, z, y][y, z] \\
{[x, y] } & =[y, x]^{-1} \\
{\left[x, y^{-1}\right] } & =[x, y]^{-y^{-1}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

In a metabelian group $G$ :

$$
[x, y, z][y, z, x][z, x, y]=1 ;
$$

and therefore, if $d \in C_{G}\left(G^{\circ}\right)$, putting $z=d$ we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
{[d, x, y] } & =[y, d, x]^{-1}=\left[[d, y]^{-1}, x\right]^{-1} \\
& =[d, y, x]^{[d, y]}=[d, y, x] .
\end{aligned}
$$

Finally note that we defy convention and write $\omega$ for the cardinal of the natural numbers.

## CHAPTER 1

## VARIETIES OF SPLIT-GROUPS

In this chapter we are concerned with varieties of certain objects called split-groups, which are defined below. A split-group is, suitably interpreted, a universal algebra, and this is pointed out in section 1.2; hence much general theory is applicable to our situation, and it will be called on to eliminate long proofs which would be redundant. However our interest in varieties of split-groups, or split-varieties for short, is the way they can be used to give results about varieties of groups; more insight seems to be gained by developing the theory of split-groups as is done below, then is gained by regarding split-groups and varieties of aplit-groups as part of a much more general framework. We repeat that our reference for results on varieties of universal algebras is [21].

### 1.1 Split-groups

(1.1.1) Definition. A split-group of the species $n$, is an ( $n+1$ )-tuple $\left(G, A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right)$ where $G$ is a group, $A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}$ are subgroups generating $G$ such that, if $B_{i}=\left\langle A_{i}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle, i \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, n\}$, then $A_{i}$ is normal in $B_{i}$ and is complemented in $B_{i}$ by $B_{i+1}$ :

$$
A_{i} \leq B_{i}, \quad A_{i} B_{i+1}=B_{i}, \quad A_{i} \cap B_{i+1}=1
$$

We shall denote the split-group ( $G, A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}$ ) by $G$ when no confusion can arise as to the particular splitting of $G$ involved; also we may write $A_{i}=A_{i}(\underline{G}), B_{i}=B_{i}(\underline{G}), i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$. The group $G$ is called the carrier of $G$; an element of $G$ is an element of $G$.
(1.1.2) Definition. A sub-split-group of the split-group ( $G, A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}$ ) is a split-group $\left(\bar{G}, \bar{A}_{1}, \ldots, \bar{A}_{n}\right)$ where $\bar{G}$ is a subgroup of $G$ and where $\bar{A}_{i}=A_{i} \cap \bar{G}, i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$. A sub-split-group is normal if it is normal as a subgroup.
(1.1.3) Definition. A morphism $\mu$ between two split-groups $\left(G, A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right)$ and $\left(\bar{G}_{,}, \bar{A}_{1}, \ldots, \bar{A}_{n}\right)$ is a group homomorphism $\mu: G \rightarrow \bar{G}$ such that $A_{i} \mu \leq \bar{A}_{i}$, i $\varepsilon\{1, \ldots, n\}$. We write $\mu: \underline{G} \rightarrow \overline{\underline{G}}$.

Notice that morphisms are defined only between split-groups of the same species; this dependence on the species will often be left understood, unless it is necessary to clarify the meaning. Note also that, in general, every inner automorphism of $G$ is not a selfmorphism of $\underline{G}$.
(1.1.4) Definition. A morphism is epi or mono according as it is onto or one-to-one as a group homomorphism of the carriers.
(1.1.5) Definition. If $\underline{G}=\left(G, A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right)$ is a split-group and $N$ is a normal sub-split-group of $G$, the quotient split-group $\underline{G} / \mathbb{N}$ is the split-group

$$
\underline{G} / \underline{N}=\left(G / \mathbb{N}, A_{1} \mathbb{N} / \mathbb{N}, \ldots, A_{n} \mathbb{N} / \mathbb{N}\right)
$$

The right-hand side is indeed a split-group: clearly $A_{i} N / N \unlhd B_{i} N / N$ and if $a_{i} \in A_{i}, b_{i+1} \varepsilon B_{i+1}$ such that $a_{i} N=b_{i+1} N$ then $b_{i+1}^{-1} a_{i} \varepsilon N=\left(N \cap A_{1}\right) \ldots\left(N A_{n}\right)$ which implies $a_{i} \varepsilon \mathbb{N}$ by the uniqueness of the decomposition $g=a_{1} a_{2} \ldots a_{n}$ for any element $g$ of $G$.
(1.1.6) Lemma. If $\mu: \underline{G} \rightarrow \underline{\bar{G}}$ is a morphism between two splitgroups then (er $\mu$, $\operatorname{ker} \mu\left|A_{1}(\underline{G}), \ldots, \operatorname{ker} \mu\right| A_{\mathrm{n}}(\underline{G})$ ) is a normal sub-splitgroup of $G$. (Here $\mu \mid A_{i}(\underline{G})$ denotes the restriction of $\mu$ to $A_{i}(\underline{G})$ ).

Proof. We have only to verify that er $\mu$ splits appropriately; indeed if $a_{1} a_{2} \ldots a_{n} \varepsilon$ er $\mu$ with $a_{i} \varepsilon A_{i} \underline{(G)}$, then $\left(a_{1} \mu\right)\left(a_{2^{\mu}}\right) \ldots$ $\left(a_{n} \mu\right)=1$ so that $a_{1} \mu=\ldots=a_{n} \mu=1$, or $a_{i} \varepsilon \operatorname{ker} \mu \mid A_{i}(\underline{G})$, i $\varepsilon\{1, \ldots, n\}$.
(1.1.7) Definition. The cartesian product of a collection of split-groups $G_{i}=\left(G_{i}, A_{i 1}, \ldots, A_{i n}\right)$ of the same species, $i \varepsilon I$, is the split-group $G$ where $G=\Pi\left\{G_{i}: i \varepsilon I\right\}$ and where $A_{j}(\underline{G})=\Pi\left\{A_{i j}: 1 \varepsilon I\right\}$ is embedded in $G$ in the natural way:

$$
A_{j}(\underline{G})=\left\{f \varepsilon G \mid f(i) \varepsilon A_{i j}, i \in I\right\}
$$

The restricted direct product is defined similarly.
(1.1.8) Definition. A fully-invariant sub-split-group of $\underline{G}$ is one invariant under all self-morphisms of G .

Note that, as not every inner automorphism of $G$ is a selfmorphism of $G$, a fully invariant sub-split-group need not be normal. It is easy to see that the intersection of the normal sub-split-groups which contain a given fully invariant sub-split-group is fully invariant (and normal).
(1.1.9) Definition. A generating set $\left\{a_{i j} \varepsilon A_{i}(\underline{G}): j \varepsilon J_{i}, 1 \leq i \leq n\right\}$ of $G$ will be called a generating set of $G$. A split-group is finitely generated if it has a finite generating set.

A split-group will be said to have a certain property if its carrier has the property; thus $G$ is finite if $G$ is finite. For split-groups of small species, special names will be adopted: a split-group of species 2 is a bigroup, and one of species 3 is a trigroup.

Finally, in this section, we note a few abuses of language that will occur from time to time. The trivial split-group should, of course, be written as $1=(1,1, \ldots, 1)$, but we will write 1 for it, and also for the trivial sub-split-group of a split-group. A subgroup $S$ of $G$ may be referred to as 'the sub-split-group $S^{\prime}$ of $G$ if it splits appropriately, while a sub-split-group may be referred to as a subgroup if, by doing so, the desired emphasis is conveyed without creating confusion.

### 1.2 Alternative formulation.

We shall in this section characterize split-groups as certain universal algebras. The operator domain is defined as follows.
(1.2.1) Definition. $\Omega_{n}$ is a commutative semigroup $\left\{\mathrm{w}_{0}, \mathrm{w}_{1}, \ldots, \mathrm{w}_{\mathrm{n}}\right\}$ of order $\mathrm{n}+1$ with multiplication table

$$
w_{i} w_{j}=w_{j} \text { for } 0 \leq i \leq j \leq n \text {. }
$$

In the terminology of [6], $\Omega_{n}$ is a commutative band, fully ordered with respect to the relation: $w_{i} \leq w_{j}$ if and only if $w_{i} w_{j}=w_{j}$.
(1.2.2) Definition. An $\Omega_{n}$-group is a triple ( $G, \Omega_{n}, \underline{e}$ ), where G is a group and where the mapping $e: G \times \Omega_{n} \rightarrow G$ has the properties

$$
\begin{aligned}
& (x y) w_{i} \underline{=}=\left(x w_{i} \underline{\underline{e}}\right)\left(y w_{i} \underline{e}\right), \\
& x w_{0} \underline{=}=x, \quad x w_{n} \underline{e}=1,
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\left(x w_{i} \underline{=}\right) w_{j}=\frac{e}{\underline{e}}=x\left(w_{i} w_{j}\right) e,
$$

for all $x, y \in G$, and $i, j \in\{0,1, \ldots, n\}$.

Since an $\Omega_{n}$-group is a universal algebra, the concepts of sub- $\Omega_{n}$-group, quotient $\Omega_{n}$-group have standard definitions: we give them here using the well-known correspondence between congruences on groups and normal subgroups.
(1.2.3) Definition. A sub $-\Omega_{n}$-group of an $\Omega_{n}$-group ( $G, \Omega_{n}, \underline{\underline{E}}$ ) is an $\Omega_{n}$-group $\left(\bar{G}, \Omega_{n}, \overline{\underline{e}}\right)$ where $\bar{G}$ is a subgroup of $G$ and where $\overline{\underline{e}}=\underline{\underline{e}} \bar{G} \times \Omega_{n}$.
(1.2.4) Definition. If ( $G, \Omega_{n}$, e) is an $\Omega_{n}$-group and ( $N, \Omega_{n}, e^{\prime}$ ) is a normal sub- $\Omega_{n}$-group (that is, a sub- $\Omega_{n}$-group which is normal quâ subgroup), then the quotient $\Omega_{n}$-group ( $\left.G, \Omega_{n}, \mathrm{e}\right) /\left(N \Omega_{n}, \underline{\underline{e}}^{\prime}\right)$
 by $x N w_{i}={ }^{\prime \prime}=x w_{i}=$ en .
(1.2.5) Definition. A homomorphism $\mu:\left(G, \Omega_{n}, \stackrel{e}{=}\right) \rightarrow\left(\bar{G}, \Omega_{n}, \overline{=}\right)$ between $\Omega_{n}$-groups is a group homomorphism $\mu: G \rightarrow \bar{G}$ such that for all $x \in G$, $\left(x w_{i}=\right) \mu=(x \mu) w_{i} \overline{\underline{e}}$.
(1.2.6) Definition. The cartesian product of a collection $\left(G_{i}, \Omega_{n}, e_{i}\right)(i \in I)$ of $\Omega_{n}$.groups is the $\Omega_{n}$-group $\left(\Omega, \Omega_{n}, e\right)$, where $G=\pi\left\{G_{i}: i \varepsilon I\right\}$ and where $e: G \times \Omega_{n} \rightarrow G$ is defined by
$f w_{j}=(1)=f(i) w_{j} e_{i}, f \varepsilon G, i \varepsilon I, j \varepsilon\{0, \ldots, n\}$.
(1.2.7) Theorem. There is a functor $\Phi$ from the category of all split-groups of species $n$ to the category of all $\Omega_{n}$-groups, which is one-to-one on both objects and morphisms and which preserves sub-structures, quotient structures and cartesian products.

Proof. Let $\left(G, A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right)$ be a split-group. Define the endomorphisms $\sigma_{i}$ of $G$ by

$$
\left(a_{1} a_{2} \cdots a_{n}\right) \sigma_{i}=a_{i+1} \cdots a_{n}
$$

for all $a_{j} \varepsilon A_{j}, j \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, n\}$, $i \varepsilon\{0,1, \ldots, n-1\}$ and define $\sigma_{n}$ to be the zero endomorphism of $G$. We call $\sigma_{i}$ the splitting endomorphism of G. Clearly

$$
\sigma_{i} \sigma_{j}=\sigma_{j} \sigma_{i}=\sigma_{j}, \quad 0 \leq i \leq j \leq n,
$$

(1.2.8)

$$
\sigma_{0}=1_{G}, \quad \sigma_{n}=0_{G}
$$

Also $B_{i+1}=G \sigma_{i}$ and $A_{i}=\operatorname{ker\sigma }_{i} \cap B_{i}$, $i \varepsilon\{0, \ldots, n\}$. Conversely, if a group $G$ has endomorphisms $\sigma_{i}$ with the properties (1.2.8), then by writing $B_{i+1}=G \sigma_{i}, A_{i}=\operatorname{ker}_{i} \cap B_{i}$ s $i \varepsilon\{0, \ldots, n\},\left(G, A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right)$ is a split-group. For, if $x \in B_{i+1}$ then

$$
x=x \sigma_{i}=\left(\left(x \sigma_{i}\right)\left(x \sigma_{i+1}\right)^{-1}\right)\left(x \sigma_{i+1}\right)
$$

and $\left(\left(x \sigma_{i}\right)\left(x \sigma_{i+1}\right)^{-1}\right) \sigma_{i+1}=\left(x \sigma_{i+1}\right)\left(x \sigma_{i+1}\right)^{-1}=1$, so that $\left(x \sigma_{i}\right)\left(x \sigma_{i+1}\right)^{-1} \varepsilon$ er $\sigma_{i+1} \cap B_{i+1}=A_{i+1}$, which shows that $B_{i+1}=A_{i+1} B_{i+2}$. Also $A_{i+1} \unlhd B_{i+1}$, and if $y \varepsilon A_{i+1} \cap B_{i+2}$ then there exists $y_{1} \in G$ with $y=y_{1} \sigma_{i+1}$, whence

$$
1=y \sigma_{i+1}=y_{1} \sigma_{i+1}^{2}=y_{1} \sigma_{i+1}=y
$$

and therefore $A_{i+1} \cap B_{i+2}=1$. This shows that $\left(G, A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right)$ is a split-group.

$$
\text { If } \underline{G}=\left(G, A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right) \text { is a split-group, define } G \Phi=\left(G, \Omega_{n}, \underline{E}\right)
$$

where $\underline{\underline{e}}: G \times \Omega_{n} \rightarrow G$ is given by

$$
(1.2 .9) \quad x w_{i}=x \sigma_{i}, \quad i \in\{0, \ldots, n\}
$$

for all $x \in G$. Conversely, if ( $G, \Omega_{n}, \underline{e}$ ) is an $\Omega_{n}$-group we use (1.2.9) to define endomorphisms $\sigma_{i}$ of $G$, which may easily be verified to have the properties (1.2.8), and therefore, in this way, ( $G, \Omega_{n^{\prime}} \xlongequal{\text { e }}$ ) defines a unique split-group $\left(G, \Omega_{n}\right.$, e, $) \psi$. Clearly $\Phi \psi$ is the identity mapping on the class of all split-groups of species $n$, and $\Psi \Phi$ is the identity mapping in the class of all $\Omega_{\mathrm{n}}$-groups; hence $\Phi$ is one-to-one and onto on objects.

$$
\text { If } \mu: \underline{G} \rightarrow \bar{G} \text { is a morphism, then } \mu: \underline{G} \Phi \rightarrow \overline{G_{G}} \text { is a }
$$ homomorphism: for it is easy to verify that if $\sigma_{i}, \bar{\sigma}_{i}$ are the splitting endomorphisms corresponding to $\underline{G}, \underline{\mathbb{G}}$ respectively, then

$\sigma_{i} \mu=\mu \bar{\sigma}_{i}$, i $\varepsilon\{0, \ldots, n\}$. Hence, from (1.2.9)

$$
\left(x w_{i} e\right) \mu=x \sigma_{i} \mu=x \mu \vec{\sigma}_{i}=(x \mu) w_{i} \bar{e}_{\underline{e}}^{=}
$$

for all $x \in G$. Conversely every $\mu: \underline{G} \Phi \rightarrow \underline{\bar{C} \Phi}$ is a morphism $\mu: \underline{G} \rightarrow \overline{\mathbb{G}}$. If we put $\mu \Phi=\mu$, then clearly $\Phi$ is a functor. The rest of the theorem is proved by similar techniques which we omit.

We may use Definition 1.2 .2 to appeal to general results: for example the usual homomorphism theorems apply for $\Omega_{n}$-groups, and therefore, via Theorem 1.2.7, for split-groups also. Because of the application we wish to make, and for convenience in simplifying notation in the calculations of Chapter 4, it is the split-group definition rather than the $\Omega_{\mathrm{n}}$-group definition that we use. In the sequel we shall suppress statements in the $\Omega_{n}$-group formulation except if the comparison is of interest (for example we are led to different definitions of free objects): or if brevity can be obtained by appeal to more general results.

### 1.3 Freeness of split-groups.

Let $Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{n}$ be free groups of rank $m_{1}, \ldots, m_{n}$ respectively, on free generators $\left\{y_{i j}: j \in J_{i}\right\} ;\left|J_{i}\right|=m_{i}$. We do not suppose that the $m_{i}$ are finite cardinals. Let $\varrho\left(m_{1}, \ldots, m_{n}\right)$ be the split-group defined as follows: the carrier is to be the free product
$Y_{1} * \ldots * Y_{n}$ and

$$
A_{i}\left(\underline{Q}\left(m_{1}, \ldots, m_{n}\right)\right)=\text { normal closure of } Y_{1} \text { in } Y_{i} * \ldots * Y_{n}
$$

(1.3.1) Definition. The split-group $Q\left(m_{1}, \ldots, m_{n}\right)$ is the absolutely split-free split-group of rank $\left(m_{1}, \ldots, m_{n}\right)$ on the split-free generating set $\left\{y_{i j}: j \varepsilon J_{i}, 1 \leq i \leq n\right\}$.

The use of the word rank obviously needs justifying and we will cover this in Lemma 1.3.6.
(1.3.2) Theorem. If $G$ is a split-group of species $n$ then every set of mappings $\mu_{i}:\left\{y_{i j}: j \varepsilon J_{i}\right\} \rightarrow A_{i}(\underline{G})$ can be extended to a morphism $\mu: \underline{Q}\left(\mathrm{~m}_{1} ; \ldots, \mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{n}}\right) \rightarrow \underline{G}$.

Proof. Since $Q\left(m_{1}, \ldots, m_{n}\right)$ is a free group with the $y_{i j}$ 's as a free generating set, certainly a group homomorphism $\mu_{\text {, }}$ which extends all $\mu_{i}$ exists that $A_{i}\left(\underline{Q}\left(m_{1}, \ldots, m_{n}\right)\right) \mu \leq A_{i}$ follows from the definition of $A_{i}\left(Q\left(m_{1}, \ldots, m_{n}\right)\right)$ and the fact that $A_{i}(\underline{G}) \leq\left\langle A_{i}(\underline{G}), \ldots, A_{n}(G) ;\right.$.

As in more general situations, we have the concept of relative freeness, and theorems characterizing it.
(1.3.3) Definition. A split-group $G$ of species $n$ is relatively split-free if it has a generating set $\left\{a_{i j}: j \varepsilon J_{i}, 1 \leq i \leq n\right\}$ with $1 \neq a_{i j} \varepsilon A_{i}(G)$ such that every set of mappings $\mu_{i}:\left\{a_{i j}: j \varepsilon J_{i}\right\} \rightarrow A_{i}(\underline{G})$ can be extended to a marphism of $\underline{G}$ into $G$. Such a generating set is called a split-free generating set for $G$. If $m_{i}=\left|J_{i}\right|,\left(m_{1}, \ldots, m_{n}\right)$ is called the rank of $\underline{G}$.

Note that in this definition, some of the $m_{i}$ may be zero: this would occur if $A_{i}(\underline{G})=1$. Invariance of the rank will be proved in Lemma 1.3.6.
(1.3.4) Theorem. If $\underline{G}$ is relatively split-free, then $\underline{G}$ has a representation $\underline{Q} / \underline{S}$, where $\underline{Q}$ is absolutely free of the same rank as $\underline{G}$, and $\underline{S}$ is a normal, fully invariant sut-split-group of Q. Conversely, every such quotient split-group $0 / \underline{S}$ is relatively split-free: if the rank of 0 is $\left(m_{1}, \ldots, m_{n}\right)$, then that of $\underline{Q} / \underline{S}$ is $\left(m_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, m_{n}^{\gamma}\right)$ where $m_{i}^{\prime}=m_{i}$, unless $A_{i}(\underline{Q}) \leq S$, in which case $m_{i}^{\prime}=0$.

Proof. Suppose that $\underline{G}$ is relatively split-free on the splitfree generating set $\left\{a_{i j} ; j \varepsilon J_{i}, 1 \leq i \leq n\right\}$. Let $\underline{Q}=\underline{Q}\left(m_{1}, \ldots, m_{n}\right)$ where $m_{i}=\left|J_{i}\right|$, $i \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, n\}$. Define the epimorphism $\lambda: \underline{Q} \rightarrow$ by

$$
y_{i j}{ }^{\lambda}=a_{i j}, \quad j \in J_{i}, \quad i \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, n\}
$$

and Theorem 1.3.2. Put $S=k e r \lambda$; then $\underline{S}$ is a normal sub-split-group of $Q$ by (1.1.6). To show that $\underline{S}$ is fully-invariant, let $\alpha$ be an arbitrary self-morphism of $\underline{Q}$ and define the mapping $B:\left\{a_{i j}: j \varepsilon J_{i}, 1 \leq i \leq n\right\} \rightarrow \underline{G}$ by

$$
a_{i j}^{\beta}=\left(y_{i j}^{\alpha}\right) \lambda .
$$

By definition, $\beta$ can be extended to a self-morphism of G. Since the restrictions of $\alpha \lambda$ and $\lambda \beta$ to the set $\left\{y_{i j}: j \varepsilon J_{i}, 1 \leq i \leq n\right\}$ of generators of $\underline{Q}$ agree, $\alpha \lambda=\lambda \beta$. Hence if $s \varepsilon S$, $s \alpha \lambda=s \lambda \beta=1$, and so $s \alpha \varepsilon \operatorname{ker} \lambda=S$.

In order to prove the converse, we need the following lemma, which was proposed to me by L.G. Kovács.
(1.3.5) Lemma. Let $\underline{H}$ be relatively split-free on the generating set $\underset{\sim}{h}=\left\{h_{i j}: j \in J_{i}, 1 \leq i \leq n\right\}$. Let $\alpha: \underline{H} \rightarrow \underline{K}$ be an epimorphism such that $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{i}}(\underline{\mathrm{I}}) \neq 1$ implies $\mathrm{A}_{i}(\underline{\mathrm{~K}}) \neq 1$, and such that kero $\alpha$ is fully invariant. Then $\alpha \mid \underline{h}$ is one-to one, and $\underline{K}$ is relatively split -free on $\mathrm{h} \alpha$.

Proof. First, $\alpha \mid \underset{\sim}{h}$ is one-to-one. For, if $h_{i j}{ }^{\alpha}=h_{i \ell}{ }^{\alpha}$ $j \neq \ell$, then $h_{i j}=h_{i l} x, x \in$ kero. Define $\eta: \underline{H} \rightarrow \underline{H}$ so that $h_{i j} n=h_{i j}, h_{i l^{\eta}}=1$ ! then $h_{i j}=h_{i j} n=x n \varepsilon$ kero $\alpha$ since kero $\alpha$ is fully invariant. Hence $\left\{h_{i j}: j \varepsilon J_{i}\right\} \subseteq k e r \alpha$ or $A_{i}(\bar{H}) \leq k e r \alpha$ which implies $A_{i}(\underline{K})=1$. It follows that $\alpha \mid \underset{\sim}{h}$ is one-to one.

Second, $\underline{\underline{L}}$ is split-free on $\underset{\sim}{h} \alpha$. For, let $B: \underset{\sim}{h} \alpha \rightarrow \underline{K}$ be any map such that $h_{i j} \beta \in A_{i}(\underline{K})$. Define $\eta: \underline{H} \rightarrow \underline{\underline{H}}$ so that $h_{i j} \eta \varepsilon h_{i j} \alpha \beta \alpha^{-1}$. Consider the map $\alpha^{-1} \eta \alpha$ from $K$ to the set of non-empty subsets of K . Observe that $1 \alpha^{-1} \eta \alpha=(\operatorname{ker} \alpha) n \alpha \leq(\operatorname{ker} \alpha) \alpha=1$ : that is $1 \alpha^{-1} n \alpha=\{1\}$. Also, if $k=k_{1}^{-1} k_{2}$ then $k \alpha^{-1}=\left(k_{1}^{-1} \alpha{ }^{-1}\right) \cdot\left(k_{2} \alpha^{-1}\right)$ in the usual multiplication of subsets of a group, and therefore

$$
k \alpha^{-1} n \alpha=\left(k_{1}^{-1} \alpha^{-1} n \alpha\right) \cdot\left(k_{2} \alpha^{-1} n \alpha\right) .
$$

Thus $\{1\}=\left(k^{-1} \alpha^{-1} \eta \alpha\right) \cdot\left(k \alpha^{-1} \eta \alpha\right)$ for all $k \in K$ showing that $\left|k \alpha^{-1} n \alpha\right|=1$. Hence $\alpha^{-1}{ }_{n \alpha}$ is an endomorphism of $K$, and since it agrees on $\underset{\sim}{h} \alpha$ with $\beta$, it is a orphism $\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{K}} \underset{\underline{K}}{ }$.

We return to the proof of (1.3.4). Write $Q^{*}$ for the absolutely split-free split-group of rank $\left(m_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, m_{n}^{r}\right)$, where $m_{i}^{\prime}=m_{i}$ unless $A_{i}(\underline{Q}) \leq \underline{S}$, in which case $m_{i}^{\prime}=0$. Then there exists a natural orphism $\gamma: \underline{Q} \rightarrow \underline{Q}^{*}$ such that $\operatorname{ker} \gamma=\left\langle Y_{i}: A_{i}(\underline{O}) \leq S\right\rangle^{0}$.

If $\delta: \underline{Q} \rightarrow \underline{Q} / \underline{S}$ is the natural morphism, define $\alpha: \underline{Q}^{*} \rightarrow \underline{Q} / \underline{S}$ by

$$
y_{i j}^{*} \alpha=y_{i j} \delta
$$

where $y_{i j}^{*}, y_{i f}$ are split-free generators of $\underline{Q}$ and $\underline{Q}$ respectively. Clearly

$$
\gamma \alpha=\delta .
$$

Now kero is fully invariant in $\underline{Q}^{*}$. for, if $\xi \quad \underline{Q}^{*} \rightarrow \underline{n}^{*}$ then there exists $\eta: \underline{Q} \rightarrow \underline{Q}$ such that $\gamma \xi=\eta \gamma ;$ and if $q^{*} \varepsilon$ kero $\alpha$, there exists $q \in \underline{Q}$ with $q \gamma=q^{*}$. Now $q \gamma \alpha=q^{*} \alpha=1=q \delta$ which means $q \in S$. Therefore

$$
\mathrm{q}^{*} \xi \alpha=(\mathrm{q} \gamma \xi) \alpha=(\mathrm{q} \eta \gamma) \alpha=(\mathrm{q} \eta) \delta=1
$$

since $q \eta \varepsilon S$. That is, $q * \xi \varepsilon$ ger $\alpha$, and therefore kero $\alpha$ is fully invariant. Also $A_{i}(\underline{0} *) \neq 1$ implies $A_{i}(\underline{O} / \underline{S}) \neq 1$ and so the conditions of the Lemma 1.3 .5 are satisfied, and $\underline{O} \underline{s}$ has the asserted properties.
(1.3.6) Lemma. The rank is an invariant of a relatively split-free split -group.

Proof. Let $\underline{G}$ be relatively sulit-free. If $A_{i}(G) \neq 1$, then $A_{i}(\underline{G}) \not G^{\prime}$. For, if $a_{i j}$ is an element of a split-free generating set consider the self-morphism $\mu: \underline{G} \rightarrow \underline{G}$ such that $a_{i j} \mu=a_{i j}$
with all other split-free generators mapped to 1 . Clearly $G^{3} \leq$ er $\mu$ and $a_{i j} \not \&$ kerr. Now $G^{i}$ carries a fully invariant sub-split-group of $G$ and the hypotheses of (1.3.5) are satisfied by the natural morphism $\alpha: \underline{G} \rightarrow \underline{G} / \underline{G}^{i}$. Hence $\underline{G} / \underline{G}^{\text { }}$ is relatively split-free of the same rank as $G$ and since each $A_{i}\left(\underline{G} / G^{\prime}\right)$ is a relatively free abelian group, its rank is invariant, and therefore so is that of $\underline{G}$.

To finish off this section we mention that had one treated a split-group as an $\Omega_{\mathrm{n}}$-group as discussed in section 1.2 , one would have been led to a smaller class of free split-groups; indeed we can make a distinction between 'free split-group' and 'split-free split-group ${ }^{2}$ as indicated by the following theorem.
(1.3.7) Theorem. Let ( $G, \Omega_{n^{\prime}}$ e) be a free $\Omega_{\mathrm{n}}$-group in the variety of all $\Omega_{n}$-groups, say one of rank $k$. Then $\left(C, \Omega_{n}, \varrho\right) \Phi^{-1}$ is an absolutely split-íree split-group of species $n$, and rank ( $k, k, \ldots, k$ ).

Proof. Write $\underline{G}=\left(G_{\Omega} \Omega_{n}, \underline{\underline{e}}\right)^{-1}$. Let $\left\{x_{j}: j \in J\right\}$ be a free generating set for $\left(G, \Omega_{n}, \underline{\text { e }}\right),|J|=k$. Put

$$
z_{i j}=\left(x_{j} w_{i-1} e\right)\left(x_{j} w_{i} e\right)^{-1}, \quad i \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, n\}, \quad j \varepsilon J .
$$

Then, for each $\mathrm{j} \varepsilon \mathrm{J}$,

$$
x_{j}=z_{1 j} z_{2 j} \cdots z_{n j} .
$$

It is clear, therefore, that $\left\{z_{i j}: j \varepsilon J_{i}, 1 \leq i \leq n\right\}$ is a generating set for $\underline{G}$. Let $\underline{H}$ be an arbitrary split-group, $\underline{H} \Phi=\left(H, \Omega_{n}, \underline{\underline{E}}^{*}\right)$, and $\mu_{i}:\left\{z_{i j}: j \varepsilon J_{i}\right\}+A_{i}(H)$ a set of mappings. Define $\mu:\left\{x_{j}: j \in J\right\} \rightarrow \underline{H} \Phi$ by

$$
x_{j}{ }^{\mu}=\left(z_{1 j^{\mu}}\right)\left(z_{2 j}{ }^{\mu} 2\right) \ldots\left(z_{n j} \mu_{n}\right), \quad j \varepsilon J .
$$

It follows that $\mu$ can be extended to a homomorphism $\mu: \underline{G} \Phi \rightarrow \underline{H} \Phi$, and hence, by Theorem 1.2.7, that $\mu: \underline{G} \rightarrow \underline{H}$ is a morphism. It is easy to verify that $\mu$ does extend the $\mu_{i}$ :

$$
\begin{aligned}
z_{i j}^{\mu} & =\left(\left(x_{j} w_{i-1} \underline{\underline{e}}\right)\left(x_{j} w_{i} \underline{\underline{e}}\right)^{-1}\right) \mu \\
& =\left(\left(x_{j}^{\mu}\right)_{i-1} \underline{\underline{e}}^{*}\right)\left(\left(x_{j} \mu\right)_{w_{i}} \underline{\underline{e}}^{*}\right)^{-1} \\
& =\left(z_{i j}{ }_{i}\right) \ldots\left(z_{n j}{ }_{n}\right) \cdot\left(\left(z_{i+1 j}{ }_{i+1}\right) \ldots\left(z_{n j}^{\mu}{ }_{n}\right)\right)^{-1} \\
& =z_{i j} \mu_{i} .
\end{aligned}
$$

If we choose for $\underline{H}$ the split-free split-group of species $n$, $Q(k, \ldots, k)$, define $\mu$ as above from $\mu_{i}: z_{i j} \rightarrow y_{i j}$, and $v: \underline{H} \rightarrow \underline{G}$ by $v: y_{i j} \rightarrow z_{i j}$ and Theorem 1.3.2, we get that $\mu \nu=1_{\underline{G}}$ and $\nu \mu=1_{\underline{E}}$, so $\underline{G} \cong \underline{H}=\underline{O}(k, \ldots, k)$.
(1.4.1) Definition. A split-word is an element of the absolutely split-free split--group $\underline{Q}(\omega, \ldots, \omega)$, the definite species $n$ being understood. We shall often write for a split-word $q \varepsilon \underline{\varrho}(\omega, \ldots, \omega)$,

$$
a=q\left(y_{1 i_{1}}, \ldots, y_{1 i_{r}}, \ldots, y_{n j_{1}}, \ldots, y_{n j_{t}}\right)
$$

or, more briefly still,

$$
q=q\left({\underset{\sim}{1}}_{1}, \ldots,{\underset{\sim}{n}}^{y_{n}}\right)
$$

to indicate the dependence of $q$ on the variables $y_{i j}$, though all those displayed may not occur explicitly.
(1.4.2) Definition. Two sets $S_{1}, S_{2}$ of split-words of species $n$ are super-equivalent if they have the same fully-invariant closure in the absolutely free split-group $\underline{o}(\omega, \ldots, \omega)$ of species $n$.
(1.4.3) Notation. We write $\hat{O}_{n}$ for $\underline{Q}(\omega, \ldots, \omega)$, the absolutely free split-group of species $n$.

We shall need a version of Theorem 33.45 from [3]. To this end, note that the carrier of $Q_{n}$ is a free group of countably infinite rank on the free generating set $\left\{y_{i j} \quad j \varepsilon J_{i} \quad 1 \leq i \leq n\right\}$.

Identify this carrier with $X_{\infty}$ and $\left\{y_{i j}: j \varepsilon J_{i}, 1 \leq i \leq n\right\}$ with $\left\{x_{k}: k=1,2, \ldots\right\}$, in the notation of section 3, Chapter 3, of [3]. The deletions $\delta_{k}$ considered there are morphisms of $Q_{n}$, and hence the argument leading to Theorem 33.45 can be transferred to $Q_{n}$. We do not wish to repeat the elaborate formalism which seems necessary to give rigorous meaning to the terms used in Theorem 33.45: intuitively, they may be described as follows. A split-tsord will be called special if it is equal to a product of powers of commutators $c_{1}, \ldots, c_{k}$ whose entries are powers of the free generators $y_{i j}$, and which have the property that if a power of some $y_{i j}$ occurs as an entry in one $c_{j}$, then a power of $y_{i j}$ occurs as an entry in each of $c_{1}, \ldots, c_{k}$. Then Theorem 33.45 can be stated in our situation as follows.
(1.4.4) Theorem. Each split-word is super-equivalent to a finite set of special split-words.
(1.4.5) Definition. The split-verbal sub-split-group of a split-group $G$ of species $n$, determined by $S=Q_{n}$, is the sub-split-group $S(\underline{G})$ whose carrier is the subgroup of $G$ generated by the set

$$
\left\{q \alpha: q \in S, \quad \alpha: \underline{Q}_{\mathrm{n}} \rightarrow \underline{G}\right\} .
$$

Note that, by definition, this set admits every self-morphisms of $G$ hence so does the subgroup of $G$ generated by it. In particular, this subgroup admits the splitting endomorphisms $\sigma_{i}$ of $\underline{G}$ and hence carries a sub-split-group: so Definition 1.4 .5 is justified. Moreover it follows that every split-verbal sub-split-group is fully invariant. As the carrier of $S\left(\underline{Q}_{n}\right)$ is the least subgroup to contain the images of $S$ under all self morphisms of $Q_{n}$, the fully invariant closure of $S$ in $\underline{Q}_{n}$ must contain $S\left(Q_{n}\right)$; but as $S\left(Q_{n}\right)$ is fully invariant and contains $S$, it follows that the fully invariant closure of $S$ in $\underline{O}_{n}$ is precisely $S\left(\underline{O}_{n}\right)$.
(1.4.6) Theorem. If $S \leq \Omega_{n}$ then the fully invariant closure of $S$ in $\underline{Q}_{n}$ is $S\left(\underline{Q}_{n}\right)$.
(1.4.7) Definition. Two sets $S_{1}, S_{2}$ of split words of the same species $n$ are equivalent if they have the same normalized fullyinvariant closure in $\underline{Q}_{n}$. (It is easily seen that the normal closure quâ subgroup of a sub-split-group is a sub-split-group: if $\underline{U} \leq \underline{G}$, $u \varepsilon U, g \varepsilon G$, then $\left.\left(u^{g}\right) \sigma_{i}=\left(u \sigma_{i}\right)^{g \sigma_{i}} \varepsilon U^{G}\right)$.
(1.4.8) Theorem. If $S_{1}, S_{2}$ are super-equivalent, they are equivalent.
(1.4.9) Theorem. Two sets $S_{1}, S_{2}$ of splitwords of species $n$ are equivalent if and only if the normalized split--verbal sub-split-groups they determine in every split-group of species $n$ are equal.

Proof. One way around is obvious. For the other, suppose that $S_{1}, S_{2}$ are equivalent and let $G$ be any split-group of species n. We must show that

$$
S_{1}(\underline{G})^{G}=S_{2}(\underline{G})^{G}
$$

The following lemma is useful here.
(1.4.10) Lemma. If $S$ is a set of split-words, $G$ a split-group and iI a normal sub-split-group of $\underline{G}$, then $S(\underline{G / N})=S(\underline{G}) \underline{N} / \mathbb{N}$.

Proof. Every morphism $\alpha: \underline{Q}_{n} \rightarrow \underline{G} \mathbb{N}$ can be factored through G via the natural morphism $v: \underline{G} \rightarrow \underline{G} / \underline{19}$, say $\alpha=\beta v$. Conversely every $B: \underline{Q}_{n} \rightarrow \underline{G}$ can be continued to $\alpha:{\underset{\sim}{n}}^{0} \rightarrow \underline{G} / \mathbb{N}$ by $\alpha=\beta \nu$. Hence $S(\underline{G}) v=S(\underline{G} / \underline{N})$ which is what we wanted. The proof of (1.4.9) runs as follows. First note that if $S=\underline{Q}_{n}$ and $\alpha: \underline{Q}_{n} \rightarrow \underline{H_{i}}$ then $S\left(\underline{Q}_{\mathrm{n}}\right) \alpha \leq \mathrm{S}(\underline{H})$ : hence, with $\underline{H}=\underline{G} \underline{\mathbb{N}}$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
S_{1}(\underline{H})=1 & \nleftarrow S_{1}\left(O_{n}\right) \leq i\left\{\text { ger } \alpha: \alpha: \underline{O}_{n} \rightarrow \underline{H}\right\} \\
& \nleftarrow S_{1}\left(O_{n}\right)^{Q_{n} \leq\left\{\text { ger } \alpha: \alpha: Q_{n} \rightarrow \underline{H}\right\}} \\
& \nleftarrow S_{2}\left(Q_{n}\right) \leq\left\{\text { ger } \alpha: \alpha: \hat{O}_{n} \rightarrow \underline{H}\right\} \\
& \nleftarrow S_{2}(\underline{H})=1 .
\end{aligned}
$$

It follows that $S_{1}(\underline{G}) \leq S_{2}(\underline{G})^{G}$ (putting $\underline{N}=S_{2}(\underline{G})^{G}$ ) and therefore that $S_{1}(\underline{G})^{G} \leq S_{2}(\underline{G})^{G}$. In a similar way, $S_{2}(\underline{G})^{G} \leq S_{1}(\underline{G})^{G}$, and this completes the proof.

Theorem 1.4.6 can be stated in a more familiar form for all relatively split-free split-groups as follows.
(1.4.11) Theorem. A sub-split-group of a relatively split-free split-group is fully invariant if and only if it is split-verbal.

Proof. Given a relatively split-free generating set of $\underline{G}$ and an element $h \in \underline{H} \leq \underline{G}$ then there exists a finite subset $T$ of that generating set such that $h \varepsilon\langle T\rangle$. There exists a finite subset $T^{\prime}$ of a free generating set of $O_{n}$ and a one-to one map $\mu: T^{\prime} \rightarrow T$ which extends to $\mu^{*}: \underline{O}_{\mathrm{n}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathrm{G}}$.

Now $\left\langle T^{9}\right\rangle \mu^{*}=\langle T\rangle$; hence there exists $q \varepsilon\left\langle T^{?}\right\rangle$ with $q \mu^{*}=h$. Given $\alpha: \underline{Q}_{n} \rightarrow \underline{G}$ let $\beta: \underline{\underline{G}} \underline{\underline{G}}$ be an extension of
$\mu^{-1} \alpha: T \rightarrow \underline{\text { G }}$. Then as $\mu^{*} \beta$ and $\alpha$ agree on $T^{\prime}$, they agree on $\langle T\rangle$, hence, in particular, $q \alpha=q \mu * \beta=h \beta \varepsilon \underline{Z}$ if $\underline{H}$ is fully invariant. This proves that fully invariant sub split groups of $\underline{G}$ are split verbal. and the converse is true in any split-group.
(1.4.12) Theorem. There is one-to-one correspondence between the (normalized) fully invariant sub-split-groups of $\mathrm{O}_{\mathrm{n}} / \mathrm{S}\left(\mathrm{O}_{\mathrm{n}}\right)^{\mathrm{Q}} \mathrm{n}$ and the (normalized) fully invariant sub split-groups of $\underline{o}_{n}$ containing $\mathrm{S}\left(\underline{Q}_{n}\right)^{Q_{n}}$.

Proof. This proof is an easy application of the last theorem.
(1.4.13) Lemma. If $\underline{S}$ dis a normal sub-split-group of $\underline{0}$, then $S(\underline{G})$ is normal in $\underline{G}$ for all $\underline{G}$ of species $n$.

Proof. It is sufficient to show that $(\mathrm{q} \alpha)^{g} \varepsilon \mathrm{~S}(\underline{G})$ whenever $\mathrm{q} \varepsilon \mathrm{S}, \alpha: \underline{O}_{\mathrm{n}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathrm{G}}, \mathrm{g} \varepsilon \underline{G}$. The proof is similar to that of (1.4.11): there exists $\alpha^{*}: \underline{\underline{O}}_{\mathrm{n}} \rightarrow \underline{\underline{G}}, \overline{\mathrm{~g}} \varepsilon \underline{\underline{O}}_{\mathrm{n}}$ such that $\mathrm{q} \alpha^{*}=\mathrm{q} \alpha, \overline{\mathrm{g}} \alpha^{*}=\mathrm{g}$, so that

$$
(\mathrm{q} \alpha)^{\mathrm{g}}=(\mathrm{q} \alpha *)^{\overline{\mathrm{g}} \alpha^{*}}=\left(\mathrm{q}^{\overline{\mathrm{g}}}\right) \alpha^{*} \varepsilon \mathrm{~S}(\underline{\mathrm{G}})
$$

since $\underline{S} \triangle \underline{O}_{\mathrm{n}}$.

Examples of sub-split-groups which are not normal are easy to find, for example each $A_{i}(\underline{G})$ is split-verbal, but of course not necessarily normal, in $\underline{G}$.

### 1.5 Split-varieties


#### Abstract

(1.5.1) Definition. If $S=Q_{n}$, the class of all split-groups $\underline{G}$ of species $n$ such that $S(\underline{G})=1$ is the variety of split-groups (or, briefly, the split variety) determined by $S$.


(1.5.2) Theorem. Equivalent sets of split-words determine the same split--variety.

Proof. If $S_{1}, S_{2}$ are equivalent, then, by Theorem 1.4.9, for any $\underline{G}_{9} S_{1}(\underline{G})^{G}=1$ if and only if $S_{2} \underline{(G)^{G}}=1$ that is $S_{1}(\underline{G})=1$ if and only if $S_{2}(G)=1$.

From this theorem it follows that, in defining split-varieties, we need only consider sets of split-words $S$ which are normal, fully invariant sub-split-groups of $\underline{Q}_{n}$. since every sub-set of $\underline{Q}_{n}$ is equivalent, by definition, to its normalized fully invariant closure. The normalized fully invariant closure of $S$ is denoted by cl .
(1.5.3) Definition. If $\underline{S}$ is a normal, fully invariant sub-split-group of $\underline{O}_{n}$, the split variety determined by $S$ will be denoted by $\quad \underset{\sim}{S}$ 。
(1.5.4) Theorem. The correspondence $\underline{S} \rightarrow S$ between normal, fully invariant sub-split-groups $\underline{S}$ of $\underline{Q}_{n}$ and the varieties $\underset{\sim}{S}$ of split-groups of species $n$ is one-to-one and reverses inclusions.

Proof. Suppose $\underline{S}_{1}, \underline{S}_{2}$ are normal and fully invariant in $Q_{n}$ and ${\underset{\sim}{1}}^{S_{1}}{\underset{\sim}{2}}_{2}$, then by Lemma 1.4 .10

$$
\underline{Q}_{n} / \underline{S}_{1} \varepsilon \quad{ }_{\sim}^{S} \subseteq{\underset{\sim}{S}}_{2}
$$

and so $\underline{S}_{2}=\underline{S}_{2}\left(\underline{Q}_{n}\right) \leq \underline{S}_{1}$. If follows that if ${\underset{\sim}{S}}_{1}={\underset{\sim}{S}}_{2}$, then $\underline{S}_{1}=\underline{S}_{2}$.

It is clear that a split-variety is closed under the operations of forming sub-split-groups, quotient split-groups and cartesian products of split-groups. The converse of this is also true on account of Theorem 1.2.7, and Birkhoff's corresponding result for varieties of universal algebras. We omit the details of proof.
(1.5.5) Theorem. A class of split-groups is closed under the operations of forming sub-split groups, quotient split-groups and cartesian products of split -groups if and only if it is a split-variety.
(1.5.6) Definition. A split-word $q \varepsilon Q_{n}$ is a split-law in $\underline{G}$ if $\{\underline{q}\}(\underline{G})=1$. simply written, $q(\underline{G})=1$. If $S$ is a splitvariety determined by the normal, fully invarient sub-split-group $\underline{S}$ of $\Omega_{n}$ then the elements of $\underline{S}$ are called the split-laws of $\underset{\sim}{S}$.
(1.5.7) Definition. Given a split-variety $\underset{\sim}{S}$ and a n-triple $\underset{\sim}{m}=\left(m_{1}, \ldots, m_{n}\right)$ such that $m_{i}=0$ if $y_{i 1} \in S$, we call $Q\left(\underset{\sim}{(m)} / S(\underset{\sim}{Q}(\mathrm{~m}))\right.$ the split-free split-group $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{m}}(\underset{\sim}{\mathrm{S}})$ of rank $\underset{\sim}{m}$ of $\underset{\sim}{S}$.

By Theorem 1.3.4 $\underset{\sim}{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{m}}(\mathrm{S})}$ is relatively split-free of rank $\underset{\sim}{m}$ and lies in $S$. Moreover,
(1.5.8) Theorem. Every mapping of a split-free generating set of $\underset{\sim}{F_{\sim}}(\underset{\sim}{S})$ into a split-group $\underset{\mathcal{G}}{ } \in \underset{\sim}{S}$ can be extended to a morphism.

Proof. Let $\underset{\sim}{z}=\left\{z_{i j}: j \varepsilon J_{i}, 1 \leq i \leq n\right\}$ be a split-free generating set for $\underset{\sim}{Q}(\underset{\sim}{m})$ then if $v: \underset{\sim}{\underline{Q}(\underset{\sim}{m})} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_{\mathrm{m}}(\underset{\sim}{c})$ is the natural morphism, $\left\{z_{i j} \nu: j \in J_{i}, 1 \leq i \leq n\right\}=\underset{\sim}{v}$ is a split-free generating set of $F_{m}(\underset{\sim}{S})$. Suppose $\beta: \underset{\sim}{z \nu}+\underset{\sim}{G} \varepsilon \underset{\sim}{S}$ such that $z_{i j}^{\nu \beta} \varepsilon A_{i}(\underline{G})$. Then $V \beta \underset{\sim}{\tilde{\sim}} \underset{\sim}{z} \rightarrow \underline{G}$ extends to a morphism $\delta: \underline{\sim}(\underset{\sim}{m})+\underline{G}$. Since $\underline{O}(\underset{\sim}{m}) \delta \leq \underset{G}{G} \underset{\sim}{S}$ it follows easily that $\operatorname{ker} \delta \geq \mathrm{S}(\underline{( }(\underset{\sim}{(m)})$. Hence $\delta$ can be factored through $\nu$, say $\delta=v_{\gamma}$ and by definition, $(\underset{\sim}{v}) \delta=(\underset{\sim}{z}) \beta ; \gamma$ is the extension of $\beta$. This completes the proof.

Theorem 1.3.4 yields,
(1.5.9) Theorem. Every relatively split-free split-group is split-free in some $S$.

Finally in this section we note the following results. Imagine $Q\left(m_{1}, \ldots, m_{n}\right)$, where $m_{1}, \ldots, m_{n}$ are all countable at most, embedded in $\underline{Q}_{n}$ in a natural way; then
(1.5.10) Theorem. If $S$ is a fully-invariant sub-split-group of $\underline{Q}_{n}$ then $\underset{\sim}{S}(\underset{\sim}{m})=\underline{S} \cap \underset{\sim}{Q}(\underset{\sim}{m})$ is fully-invariant in $\underset{\sim}{Q}(\mathbb{m})$, and

$$
\underline{S}(\underline{m})=S(\underline{Q}(\underset{\sim}{m})),
$$

and

$$
\underline{S}(\underset{\sim}{m})^{Q(m)}=\underline{s}_{\sim}^{Q} n \cdot \underline{\sim} \underbrace{(m)}_{\sim}
$$

Proof. Clearly $S(\underset{\sim}{Q}(\underset{\sim}{m})) \leq \underset{\sim}{Q}(\underset{\sim}{m}) \cap \underline{S}=\underline{S}(\underset{\sim}{m})$. Conversely, if $q \in \underset{\sim}{Q}(\underset{\sim}{m}) \cap \underline{S}$ and $\alpha$ is a self-morphism of $Q_{n}$ which maps $\underline{Q}(\underset{\sim}{m})$ identically and every thing else to 1 , then $q=q \alpha \varepsilon S(\underline{Q}(\underset{\sim}{(m))}$ which gives us the opposite inequality.

For the second part we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \underline{S}(\underset{\sim}{m})\left(\underset{\sim}{Q}(\mathbb{m})=(S \cap \underset{\sim}{Q}(\underset{\sim}{m}))^{Q(\underline{m})} \leq \underline{S}^{Q_{n}} \cap \underline{Q}(\underset{\sim}{m})\right. \\
& =S^{Q_{n}}(\underset{\sim}{Q}(\underset{\sim}{m})) \text {, by the first part, } \\
& \leq \mathrm{S}(\underline{Q}(\underset{\sim}{m}))^{\mathrm{O}(\mathrm{~m})} \\
& =\underline{S}(\underset{\sim}{m})^{Q(\underset{\sim}{m})},
\end{aligned}
$$

again by the first part.
(1.5.11) Definition. The split-variety generated by a set $\left\{\underline{G}_{i}: i \varepsilon I\right\}$ of split-groups of the same species $n$ is the smallest split-variety of species $n$ which contains all $\underline{G}_{i}$; equivalently, the split-variety generated by $\left\{\underline{G}_{i}: i \varepsilon I\right\}$ is the class of split-groups satisfying the split-laws which hold in all $\underline{G}_{i}$. We denote this split-variety by $\operatorname{svar}\left(\left\{\underline{G}_{i}: i \varepsilon I\right\}\right)$.
(1.5.12) Definition. The join of two split-varieties S,T of the same species is the split-variety generated by the set $\left\{\underline{G}_{i}: \underline{G}_{i} \in \underset{\sim}{S}\right.$ or ${\underset{G}{i}}^{\in} \underset{\sim}{T}\}$ : the intersection of $\underset{\sim}{S}, \underset{\sim}{T}$ is the class intersection of $\underset{\sim}{S}, \underset{\sim}{T}$. We denote join and intersection by $\underset{\sim}{\mathcal{S}} \underset{\sim}{T}$ and $\underset{\sim}{S} \wedge \underset{\sim}{T}$ respectively.
(1.5.13) Theorem. The laws of $\underset{\sim}{S} \vee \underset{\sim}{T}, \underset{\sim}{S} \wedge \underset{\sim}{T}$ are $\underline{S} \cap \underline{T}$ and SI SI( ST) respectively.

Proof. The proof follows easily from the definitions and we omit it.
(1.5.14) Theorem. A split-variety $S$ is generated by its finitely generated split-groups.

Proof. If $T$ is the sub-split-variety generated by the finitely generated split-groups of $S$, let $q$ be a split-law of $T_{\text {, }}$ and $\underline{H} \in \underset{\sim}{S}, \alpha: \underline{Q}_{n} \rightarrow \underline{H}$. As previously, we may suppose that $\alpha$ acts non-trivially on only finitely many free generators $y_{1 j}$, so that $\mathrm{O}_{\mathrm{n}}{ }^{\alpha} \leq \underline{H}$ is finitely generated, and therefore $\mathrm{q} \alpha=1$.

### 1.6 Examples of split-varieties.

Let $S$ be a split-variety of species $n$, and for each $i$ consider the variety of groups $\underline{\underline{V}}_{i}=\operatorname{var}\left(\left\{A_{i}(\underline{\Theta}): \underline{G} \varepsilon S\right\}\right)$. It is clear then, that $G \in \underset{\sim}{S}$ implies $G \in \underline{=}_{1}{\underset{V}{V}}_{2} \cdots \underline{V}_{n}$. Conversely suppose
 Consider the class ${ }_{N} \sigma$ obtained in the following way:

$$
\stackrel{N \sigma}{=}=\left\{\left(G, A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right): G \varepsilon \underline{=}, A_{i} \in \underline{Y}_{i} . \quad 1 \leq i \leq n\right\} .
$$

Clearly Wo is a split -variety since it is closed under taking sub-split-groups, quotient split-groups, and cartesian products; note that No depends on $\underline{\underline{V}}_{1}, \ldots, \underline{V}_{\mathrm{n}}$ as well as on $\underline{\underline{W}}$.
(1.6.1) Definition. Denote by $\underline{\underline{V}}_{1} \circ \underline{\underline{V}}_{2} \circ \ldots \circ \underline{=}_{\mathrm{n}}$ the split-variety $\left(\underline{V}_{1} \underline{V}_{2} \ldots V_{=n}^{V}\right) \sigma$.
(1.6.2) Theorem. To each split-variety of species $n$ there corresponds a unique 'smallest' product variety $\underline{\underline{V}}_{1} \underline{V}_{2} \cdots \underline{\underline{V}}_{n}$ such that $\underline{G} \in \underset{\sim}{S}$ implies $G \in \underline{=}_{1} \underline{\underline{V}}_{2} \cdots \underline{=}_{n}^{V}$.

Conversely, there is a meet-homorphism $\sigma$ from the lattice of subvarieties of ${ }_{=}^{W} V_{2} \ldots V_{n}$ to the lattice of sub-split-varieties of $V_{1} \circ \ldots 0{\underset{\sim}{V}}_{V}^{V}$. If $\underset{=}{W} \underline{V}_{1} \underline{V}_{2} \cdots \stackrel{V}{=}_{n}$ s then the split-laws of $W \sigma$ are determined by

$$
V_{i}\left(Y_{i}\right), \quad 1 \leq i \leq n \text { and } W\left(Q_{n}\right)
$$

(where $Y_{1} * \ldots * Y_{n}$ is the carrier of $Q_{n}$ ). The split-free-group of rank $\left(m_{1}, \ldots, m_{n}\right)$ of $V_{1} \circ \ldots 0 \stackrel{V}{n}_{n}$ is carried by the iterated verbal wreath product $X_{1}$, defined inductively by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& X_{n}=F_{m_{n}}\left(V_{n}\right) \\
& X_{i}=F_{m_{i}}\left(V_{i}\right) w r_{V_{i}} X_{i+1} s \quad 1 \leq i \leq n-1
\end{aligned}
$$

(where, as in (1.5.7), we choose $m_{i}=0$ if $y_{i 1} \varepsilon v_{i}\left(Y_{i}\right)$ ).

Proof. To see that $\sigma$ is a meet-homomorphism, proceed as follows. Let $W_{1}, W_{2}$ be subvarieties of ${ }_{=}^{V}{ }_{1}=_{2} \cdots V_{=n}$ at once we have

$$
\left(\stackrel{W}{\underline{W}}_{1} \wedge \stackrel{W}{=}_{2}\right) \sigma \leq \stackrel{W}{=}_{1} \sigma \wedge \stackrel{\underline{W}}{2}^{\sigma}
$$

For the converse, suppose $G \varepsilon{\underset{=}{=}}_{=}{ }^{\wedge} \stackrel{\text { W }}{=}_{=} \sigma$, and then $G \varepsilon \stackrel{V}{=}_{1} \wedge \stackrel{W}{=}_{2}$ so that $\underline{G} \varepsilon\left(\stackrel{W}{W}_{1} \wedge \stackrel{W}{=}_{2}\right) \sigma$.

Now the split-laws of $\underline{V}_{1} \circ \ldots \circ \underline{=}_{n}$ are determined by $V_{i}\left(Y_{i}\right)$, $1=1, \ldots, \pi$ since a split-group $\underline{G}$ belongs to $\underline{V}_{1} \circ \ldots \circ \underline{V}_{n}$ if and only if it has these split-laws. The split-free split-group of rant $\underset{\sim}{m}$ in $\underset{\underline{V}}{\underset{1}{V}} \circ \ldots \circ \underset{\underline{n}}{V}$ is, by definition, $\underset{\sim}{q}(\underset{\sim}{m}) / \mathrm{S}(\underline{\sim}(\underset{\sim}{(m)})$ where

$$
s=c 1\left(\left\{V_{1}\left(Y_{1}\right), \ldots, V_{n}\left(Y_{n}\right)\right\}\right)
$$

If $S_{i}=V_{i}\left(Y_{i}\right)$, then $S(\underset{\sim}{Q}(\underset{\sim}{m}))$ is the normal closure in $\underset{\sim}{O}(\underset{\sim}{m})$ of all $S_{i}\left(\underset{\sim}{Q}(\underset{\sim}{(n)})\right.$. We construct $F_{m}\left(\underline{V}_{=1} \circ \ldots \circ{\underset{=}{V}}_{n}\right)$ by successively factoring out of $\underset{\sim}{Q}(\underset{\sim}{m})$, the normal closures of the $S_{i}(\underline{\sim}(\underset{\sim}{Q}))$. Write $Q(\underset{\sim}{m})=A_{1} B_{2}$ in the usual notation: and at the first stage, since

$$
A_{1}=\Pi *\left\{\bar{Y}_{1}^{b}: b \varepsilon B_{2}\right\}
$$

(where $\bar{Y}_{1} * \ldots * \bar{Y}_{n}$ is the carrier of $\underset{\sim}{Q}(\underset{\sim}{m})$ ), and since $S_{1}(\underset{\sim}{Q}(\underset{\sim}{m})) \underset{\sim}{Q(m)}=$ $V_{1}\left(A_{1}\right)$, we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
A_{1} / V_{1}\left(A_{1}\right) & \cong\left(\Pi *\left\{F_{m_{1}}\left(\underline{V}_{1}\right): b \varepsilon B_{2}\right\}\right) / V_{1}\left(\Pi *\left\{F_{m_{1}}\left(V_{1}\right): b \varepsilon B_{2}\right\}\right) \\
& =V_{1} \Pi\left\{F_{m_{1}}\left(\underline{V}_{1}\right): b \in B_{2}\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

(see 18.22, 18.23, 18.31 in [3]). Hence

$$
\underline{Q}(\underset{\sim}{m}) / S_{1}(\underline{Q}(\underline{m})){ }_{\sim}^{Q(m)}=F_{m_{1}}\left(\underline{\underline{V}}_{1}\right) w r_{=1}^{V}\left(\pi *\left\{\bar{Y}_{j}: 2 \leq i \leq n\right\}\right) .
$$

Using Theorem 1.4.12 and well known properties of verbal wreath products, we arrive by induction, at the assertion of the theorem.

Finally, introduce the free group $x_{\infty}$ on the free generating set $\left\{x_{j}: j=1,2, \ldots\right\}$, and the homomorphism $v: X_{\infty} \rightarrow Q_{n}$ defined by

$$
x_{j} v=y_{1 j} y_{2 . j} \ldots y_{n j}, \quad j \in\{1,2, \ldots\} .
$$

Then it can be proved by standard tricks that $T=W\left(Q_{n}\right)$ is the normalized fully invariant closure of $W \nu$ in $O_{n}$. If $\underline{G} \varepsilon \underset{\sim}{T} \wedge \underline{\underline{V}}_{1} \circ \ldots \circ \underline{\underline{V}}_{n}, W \in W$ and $\beta: X_{\infty} \rightarrow G$, define $\alpha: \underline{Q}_{n} \rightarrow \underline{G}$ so that

$$
y_{i j}{ }^{\alpha}=a_{i j} \quad 1 \leq i \leq n, \quad j \in\{1,2, \ldots\}
$$

where $x_{j} \beta=a_{1 j} \ldots a_{n j}, a_{i j} \varepsilon A_{i}(\underline{G})$ : then $v \alpha=\beta$ and

$$
W B:=(w v) \alpha=1
$$

since $w \mathcal{T} \mathbb{T}$ and $\underline{G} \in T$. We conclude that $G \in \underline{\underline{W}}$ and therefore that $\underline{G} \varepsilon \underline{\underline{W} \sigma}$ : hence $\underset{\sim}{T} \wedge \underline{\underline{V}}_{1} \circ \ldots \circ \underline{\underline{V}}_{\mathrm{V}} \subseteq \underline{\underline{N}} \sigma$. The opposite direction is proved in a similar manner.

Whether or not $\sigma$ is a join-homonorphism I have been unable to establish. The mapping $\sigma$ is in general, neither one-to one nor onto, as the following examples show.
(1.6.3) Example. The mapping $\sigma$ is in general not onto.

Consider any product variety $\underline{\underline{U V}}$ and the bivariety

$$
\underset{\sim}{B}=\{(G, A, B): G=A \times B, A \in \underline{\underline{U}}, \quad B \in \underline{\underline{V}}\},
$$

and let

$$
B^{*}=\{G \varepsilon \underset{\underline{U}}{\underline{\underline{V}}}: G=A \times B, A \varepsilon \underline{\underline{U}}, B \in \underline{\underline{V}}\}
$$

Now $B^{*}$ may not be a variety (if it were then clearly $B * \sigma=B$ ), but in any event $\sigma$ is onto only if (var $\left.B^{*}\right) \sigma=B$. We construct here an example where this is not the case. As var $B^{*} \geq \underline{\underline{U}} \vee \underline{\underline{V}}$ it suffices to produce $\underset{\underline{U}}{\underline{U}}, \underline{\underline{V}}$ such that there exists $\underline{K} \varepsilon \underline{\underline{U}} \circ \underline{\underline{\underline{V}}}$ with $K \varepsilon \underset{\underline{U}}{\sim} \stackrel{\underline{V}}{ }$ but $K \notin \underset{\sim}{B}$. Put $G_{1}, G_{2}, G_{3}$ for the following groups: $G_{1}$ non-abelian, exponent 3, order 27: $G_{2}$ non-abelian, exponent 9 order 27; $G_{3}$ cyclic, order 9 ; and put $\xlongequal[=]{U}=\operatorname{var} G_{3}, \quad \underline{\underline{V}}=\operatorname{var} G_{1}$. Then it is well-known that $G_{2} \varepsilon \underset{\underline{U}}{\underline{V}}, G_{2} \nsubseteq \underline{\underline{U}}, \quad G_{2} \ddagger \underline{\underline{V}}$. As $G_{2}$ is a split-extension of $G_{3}$ by a cycle of order 3 , it carries a bigroup $\underline{G}_{2} \varepsilon \underline{\underline{U}} \circ \underline{\underline{V}}$ and therefore $\underline{G}_{2} \varepsilon(\underline{\underline{U}} \vee \underline{\underline{V}}) \sigma$. However, $\underline{G}_{2} \notin \underset{\sim}{B}$ for $G_{2}$ has no proper direct decomposition (since all prover subgroups of $G_{2}$ are abelian while $G_{2}$ is not).
(1.6.4) Example. The mapping $\sigma$ is in general not one-toone.

Put $\underline{\underline{U}}=\underline{\underline{V}}={\underset{\underline{E}}{2}} t^{\prime} \quad t>0, \quad \underline{\underline{N}}=\underline{\underline{\underline{A}}}_{2} u, \quad t \leq u \leq 2 t$. Then $\underline{\underline{W}} \sigma=\underline{\underline{U}} \times \underline{\underline{V}}$ (see (1.7.1)), for all such $u$. Other, much less trivial, examples of both situations will occur later, in Chapter 5.
(1.6.5) Remark. In tackling the descending chain condition on subvarieties of the product varieties $\xlongequal{\mathrm{UV}}$ it would be sufficient to show that
i) $\underline{\underline{U}} \circ \stackrel{\underline{\underline{V}}}{ }$ has descending chain condition on sub-split-varieties and ii) for each $\underline{\underline{N}} \subseteq \mathbb{U}$, (WU) $\sigma^{-1}$ has descending chain condition. It is in situations like this that split-varieties may prove useful.

### 1.7 Products of split-varieties.

The last section leads us naturally to ask for a product operation on split-varieties similar to that on varieties of groups. Unfortunately it doesn't seem possible to do this inside the variety of all split-groups of the same species. However we can make the following definition, and this suits our purposes later on.

$$
\text { (1.7.1) Definition. If } \underset{\sim}{\mathrm{S}} \underset{\sim}{T} \text { are split-varieties of species }
$$ $m, n$ respectively, then $\underset{\sim}{S} \circ \underset{\sim}{T}$ is the split-variety of species $m+n$ :

$$
\underset{\sim}{S} \circ \underset{\sim}{T}=\left\{\underline{G}: A_{1}(\underline{G}) \ldots A_{m}(\underline{G}) \in \underset{\sim}{S}: A_{m+1}(\underline{G}) \cdots A_{m+n}(\underline{G}) \varepsilon \underset{\sim}{T}\right\}
$$

Also define

$$
\underset{\sim}{S} \times \underset{\sim}{T}=\left\{\underline{G} \varepsilon \underset{\sim}{S} \circ \underset{\sim}{T}: G=A_{1}(\underline{G}) \ldots A_{m}(\underline{G}) \times A_{m+1}(\underline{G}) \ldots A_{m+n}(\underline{G})\right\} .
$$

That $\underset{\sim}{S} \circ T$ and $\underset{\sim}{S} \times \underset{\sim}{T}$ are split-varieties follows from their closure under taking sub-split-groups, quotients split-groups and cartesian products of split-groups. The split-laws of So T are now described. First some terminology.

If $m, n$ are natural numbers, imagine $Q_{m} Q_{n}$ embedded in $Q_{m+n}$ in the natural way; if $Y_{1} * \ldots * Y_{m+n}$ is the carrier of $0_{m+n}$ then $\cap_{m}$, for example, is the sub-split-group carried by $Y_{1} * \ldots \% Y_{m}$. Define a group endomorphism of $Q_{m+n}$. say $\tau$, by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& y_{i j}^{\tau}=y_{i+m j}, \quad 1 \leq i \leq n, j \varepsilon\{1,2, \ldots\} \\
& y_{i j} \tau=1, \quad n+1 \leq 1, j \varepsilon\{1,2, \ldots\}
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\left\{y_{i j}: j=1,2, \ldots\right\}$ freely generates $Y_{i}$. With this much convention we can now state
(1.7.2) Theorem. The split-laws of $\underset{\sim}{S}$ o $\underset{\sim}{T}$, where $\underset{\sim}{S}, \underset{\sim}{T}$ are of species $m, n$ resepctively, are $c 1\left(S, T_{\tau}\right)=U$, and $U=S\left(Q_{m+n}\right) \cdot T \tau\left(\underline{Q}_{m+n}\right)^{0 m+n}$.

Proof. If $G \in \underset{\sim}{U}, q \in S$ and $\left.\alpha:{\underset{\sim}{m}}_{0}^{U_{m}} A_{1} \underline{G}\right) \ldots A_{m}(G)$
then there exists $B: \underline{Q}_{m+n} \rightarrow \underline{G}$ such that $\left.\beta\right|_{m}=\alpha$ then

$$
q \alpha=q \beta=1
$$

whence $A_{1}(\underline{G}) \ldots A_{m}(\dot{G}) \varepsilon \underset{\sim}{S}$. If $r \in T$, and $\gamma:{\underset{-n}{0}}_{0} \rightarrow B_{m}(\underline{G})$ then there exists $\delta: \underline{Q}_{m+n} \rightarrow \underline{G}$ such that $\tau \delta=\gamma$, and so

$$
r \gamma=(r \tau) \delta=1
$$

since $r \tau \in T \tau$. We have shown, therefore, that $E \in \underset{\sim}{S} \circ T$. A similar proofdeals with the opposite direction and thus $U=S \circ T$.

To conclude the proof, note that $c l(S, T \tau)=(c 1 S)(c 1 T \tau)$. Now observe that it is immaterial whether we regard $S$ as being of species $m+n$, and calculate $S\left(\Omega_{m+n}\right)$, or of species $m$, and calculate $S\left(A_{1}\left(0_{m+n}\right) \ldots A_{m}\left(0_{m+n}\right)\right)$ we get the same result in either case. Moreover $S\left(Q_{m+n}\right)$ is normal in $Q_{m+n}$ : it is certainly normal in $A_{1}\left(\underline{Q}_{m+n}\right) \ldots A_{m}\left(\dot{Q}_{m+n}\right)$, and if $a_{i} \in A_{i}\left(\underline{Q}_{m+n}\right), m+1 \leq i \leq m+n$, then $a_{i}$ induces a self-morphism of $A_{1}\left(Q_{m+n}\right) \ldots A_{m}\left(Q_{m+n}\right)$ which is therefore admitted by $S\left(Q_{m+n}\right)$. Also $c l T=T\left(Q_{m+n}\right)^{Q_{m+n}}$. This finishes the proof.
 and $\underset{\sim}{S} \circ{\underset{\sim}{T}}^{T} \subseteq \underset{\sim}{S} \circ{\underset{\sim}{2}}^{T}$ if and only if $T_{\sim} \subseteq T_{\sim}{ }_{2}$. The product ${ }^{\circ} O^{\circ}$ is associative.

The proof of this is completely trivial and we omit it. The product we have defined is very similar in its properties, to the product defined for varieties of groups. We note one other result in this direction.

ii) $\quad\left(\underset{\sim}{S} \mathcal{S}_{1} \wedge \underset{\sim}{S_{2}}\right) \circ \underset{\sim}{T}={\underset{\sim}{S}}^{S_{1}} \circ \underset{\sim}{T} \wedge{\underset{\sim}{S}}^{S_{2}} \circ \underset{\sim}{T}$
iii) $\quad \underset{\sim}{S} \circ\left({\underset{\sim}{T}}_{1} \wedge{\underset{\sim}{T}}^{T_{2}}\right)=\underset{\sim}{S} \circ{\underset{\sim}{T}}^{T} \wedge{\underset{\sim}{S}}_{S} \circ{\underset{\sim}{T}}_{2}$ 。
iv)
and the inclusion may be proper.

Proof. If $T_{\sim}$ is the variety of all split-groups of species $n_{s}$ the first assertion for $\underset{\sim}{T}=T_{\sim}^{T}$ is equivalent to

$$
\left(s_{1} \cap s_{2}\right)\left(Q_{m+n}\right)=s_{1}\left(Q_{m+n}\right) \cap s_{2}\left(Q_{m+n}\right)
$$

Write $\underline{Q}=\underline{O}_{m+n}$. Then, as noted in the proof of (1.7.2), $S_{1}(\underline{Q})=$ $S_{1}\left(A_{1}(\underline{Q}) \ldots A_{m}(\underline{Q})\right)$. We show that $A_{1}(\underline{Q}) \ldots A_{\mathrm{F}}(\underline{Q})$ is isomorphic qua split-group, to $S_{m}$. For, put

$$
\bar{Y}_{i}=\Pi *\left\{Y_{i}^{b}: b \in B_{m+1}(Q)\right\}, \quad 1 \leq i \leq m_{2}
$$

and it is easy to verify, that $A_{1}(\underline{Q}) \ldots A_{m}(\underline{Q})=\bar{Y}_{1} * \ldots * \bar{Y}_{m}$ and that $A_{i}(Q)$ is the normal closure of $\bar{Y}_{i}$ in $\bar{Y}_{i}, \ldots, \bar{Y}_{m p}$. Hence (i) is true for $\underset{\sim}{T}={\underset{\sim}{T}}_{0}$.

If $\underline{G}, \underline{G}_{1}, \underline{G}_{2}$ are the split-free split-groups of
 embedded in $\underline{G}_{1} \times \underline{G}_{2}$ according to the monomorphism $\mu: \underline{G} \rightarrow \underline{G}_{1} \times \underline{G}_{2}$ defined by

$$
\mathrm{q}\left(\mathrm{~S}_{1}(\underline{Q}) \cap \mathrm{S}_{2}(\underline{Q})\right) \mu=\left(\mathrm{q}_{1}(\underline{Q}), \quad \mathrm{q} S_{2}(\underline{Q})\right), \quad \mathrm{q} \in \underline{Q} .
$$

Now $T \tau\left(\underline{G}_{1} \times \underline{G}_{2}\right)^{G_{1} \times G_{2}}$, $\underline{G} \mu=T \tau(\underline{G})^{G} \mu ;$ for, if $\quad\left(x_{1}(\underline{Q}), y S_{2}(\underline{Q})\right) \varepsilon$ $\operatorname{T\tau }\left(\underline{G}_{1} \times \underline{G}_{2}\right)^{G_{1} \times G_{2}}$, $\underline{G} \mu$ then there exists $q \varepsilon \underline{Q}$ such that $q S_{1}=$ $x S_{1}, q S_{2}=y S_{2}$, and with $q \varepsilon \tau(\underline{0})^{Q}$. Hence $q\left(S_{\underline{( })}^{\underline{Q})} \cap S_{2}(\underline{Q})\right) \in T \tau(\underline{G})^{G}$ whence $\left(x S_{1}(\underline{Q}), y S_{2}(\underline{Q})\right) \varepsilon \operatorname{T\tau }(\Omega)^{G} \mu$. It follows that $G / T \tau(\underline{G})^{G}$ is embedded monomorphically in $\underline{G}_{1} / T \tau\left(\underline{G}_{1}\right)^{G_{1}} \times \underline{G}_{2} / T \tau\left(\underline{G}_{2}{ }^{G_{2}}\right.$. This shows that
and as the opposite inclusion is trivial, this completes the proof of (i). The rest are easy: the only nontrivial thing is to show that the inclusion (iv) may be proper. In fact the familiar example which establishes this for products of varieties of groups can be interpreted to settle this (21.25 in [3]) :-

(1.7.5) $\quad\left[y_{11}, y_{21}, y_{22}^{2}, y_{23}^{3}\right]$.

Consider the bigroup $G \varepsilon \stackrel{A}{=}{ }^{A_{G}}$ defined as a 7 -cycle $A_{1}=\langle a\rangle$ split by its automorphism of order $\sigma_{2}\langle b\rangle=A_{2}$ say, with $E=\left(A_{1} A_{2}, A_{1}, A_{2}\right)$. Now $A_{2}$ is represented fixed point free on ${ }^{1} 1$, and so

$$
\left[a, b, b^{2}, b^{3}\right] \neq 1
$$

showing that the split-word (1.7.5) is not a split-law of $G$. This completes the proof of the theorem.

Note that Definition 1.6 .1 is in accord with our definition of produtt, provided that we interpret a variety of groups as a variety of split-groups of species 1 .

## CHAPTET. 2.

## ISCELLANEOUS RESULTS

In this brief chapter we record some general results about splitvarieties, results related to the lattice of split-varieties, and then introduce the bivarieties with which the remainder of this thesis is principally concerned.

### 2.1 Lattices of split-varieties.

(2.1.1) Theorem. The split-varieties of the same species $n$ form a modular lattice with respect to (the inclusion order and) the 12 join and intersection defined in (1.5.15).

Proof. By virtue of (1.5.4) and (1.5.13) it is sufficient to show that the normal, fully invariant sub-split-groups of $O_{n}$ form a modular lattice with respect to the inclusion order. This is clear, since if $\underline{S}, \underline{T}$ are normal and fully invariant in $Q_{n}, \underline{S} \cap \underline{T}$ and $\underline{S T}$ are also, and therefore the normal, fully invariant sub-split-groups form a sublattice of the modular lattice of the normal subgroups of $Q_{n}$.

Because of this modularity, many results which are essentially lattice-theoretic can be taken over to our situation all here are quoted without proof. The first is well-known, particularly as a statement about varieties of groups.
(2.1.2) Theorem. If $S$ is a split-variety which has a finite basis for its split-laws, then every sub-split--variety of $S$ has a finite basis if and only if every descending chain of sub-splitvarieties of $S$ breaks off.

Of course if there existed an infinite descending chain, $\underline{V}_{1} \supset \underline{V}_{2} \supset \ldots$ say, of varieties of groups then we could trivially construct an infinite descending chain of split--varieties of arbitrary species $\left(\underline{V}_{1} \circ \underset{\sim}{S} \partial \underline{\underline{V}}_{2} \circ \underset{\sim}{S} \supset \ldots\right.$ where $\underset{\sim}{S}$ is any split-variety).

The second result noted here I first proved for varieties of groups (see 16.25 in [3]). It is however a much older result about modular lattices, due to Pickert [22].
(2.1.3) Theorem. If $\underset{\sim}{S}, T$ are split-varieties of the same species, each of which has descending chain condition on sub-splitvarieties, then $\underset{\sim}{\mathrm{S}} \vee \underset{\sim}{T}$ does also.

By entirely similar methods one also proves
(2.1.4) Theorem. A split-variety $\underset{\sim}{S}$ has descending chain condition on sub-split-varieties if and only if there exists
${\underset{\sim}{0}}^{S_{0}}{\underset{\sim}{S}}^{S}$ such that $\underset{\sim}{S}$, has descending chain condition on sub-splitvarieties, and also all descending chains between $\underset{\sim}{S}$ and $\underset{\sim}{S}{ }_{0}$ break off.
2.2 The bivariety $\xlongequal{\text { A }}$ ○

From now on we will almost exclusively be concerned with varieties of bigroups (ivarieties), mostly, indeed, with subvarieties of $\stackrel{A}{\underline{E}} \mathrm{~A}$. It is convenient to modify our notation to suit this situation. Thus we shall drop double subscripts and write $Y_{m} * Z_{n}$ for the carrier of the absolutely split-free bigroup of rank ( $\dot{m}, n)$, with split-free generating set $\left\{y_{i}: i \in I,|I|=m\right\},\left\{z_{j}: j \varepsilon J,|J|=n\right\}$.

We now restate several results for the case of bivarieties, all of them special cases of Theorem 1.4.4.
(2.2.1) Theorem. If $q$ is a biword, then $q$ is equivalent to a set $U_{0} \cup V_{0} \cup S$ of special biwords, where $U_{0}, V_{0}$ are contained in $Y_{\omega} Z_{\omega}$ respectively, and where each element of $S$ is a product of powers of commutators, each of which involves at least one $y_{i}$ and at least one $z_{j}$ (and the entries of each are powers of the $y_{i}$ and $z_{j}$ ). Moreover if $\underline{\underline{V}}_{1}, \underline{V}_{2}$ are the varieties of groups determined by the laws $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{O}}, \mathrm{V}_{0}$ respectively, then $\stackrel{\mathrm{V}}{1}^{=1} \stackrel{\mathrm{~V}}{2}$ is the bivariety corresponding to the bivariety determined by $q$, by Theorem 1.6.2.
(2.2.2) Corollary. Each sub-bivariety of $\underset{\underline{A}}{\circ} \underline{\underline{V}}$ is determined by the bilaws of $\underset{\underline{A}}{ } \circ \underline{\underline{V}}$ together with a set $\left\{y_{1}^{\mathbb{m}}\right\}_{u} \overline{\mathrm{~V}}, \mathrm{~S}$ of special biwords where $m \geq 0, \bar{v} \subseteq z_{\omega}-V$ and each element of $S$ is a product of powers of commutators of the type $\left[y_{1}, W_{1}, \ldots, w_{r}\right]$, with each $w_{k}$ a commutator whose entries are powers of the $z_{j}$ but which does not lie in $c 1\left(V_{\checkmark} \overline{\mathrm{V}}\right)$.
 $\underline{\underline{V}}^{\prime} \subseteq \underline{\underline{V}}$; and if this $m$ is chosen minimal, $\left\{y_{1}^{m},\left[y_{1}, y_{2}\right]\right\}$ is a basis for the laws of all $A_{1}(\underline{G}), \underline{G} \varepsilon \underset{\sim}{T}$, as noted in (2.2.1). If $\underline{\underline{V}}^{\prime}$ is chosen minimal, then write $\overline{\mathrm{V}}$ for a set of special biwords which determine $\mathrm{V}^{\text {® }}$ modulo V .

By (2.2.1) we are left with considering 'genuine' commutator birords in $T$, call one $t$ say. Then $t$ is a product of powers of commutators whose entries are powers of the $y_{i}$ and $z_{j}$. We may assume that each commutator in this product involves only $y_{1}$ raised to a power, and no other $\mathrm{y}_{\mathrm{i}}{ }^{\prime} \mathrm{s}$, since $\left[\mathrm{y}_{1}, \mathrm{y}_{2}\right]$ is a bilaw in $\stackrel{A}{\underline{\underline{V}}} \circ \underline{\underline{V}}$. This power of $y_{1}$ may be moved to the front of each commutator so that we have $t$ expressed as a product of powers of commutators of the form

$$
\left[y_{1}^{\alpha}, w_{1}, \ldots, w_{r}\right]=\left[y_{1}, w_{1}, \ldots, w_{r}\right]^{\alpha},
$$

## (2.2.3) Corollary. Every sub-bivariety of $\mathcal{A} \circ \underline{\underline{A}}$ is

 determined by the bilaws of $\mathcal{A} 0$ A together with a set $\left\{y_{1}^{m}, z_{1}^{n}\right\} \quad S$ of special bilaws, where $m, n \geq 0$ and where every element $s \varepsilon S$ is a product of powers of commutators of the type.$$
\left[y_{1}, z_{1}{ }_{1}, \ldots, z_{r}^{\lambda_{r}}\right]
$$

where $r$ depends only on $s$, and $\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{r}$ are all nonzero, and $\lambda_{j}<n$ if $n \neq 0, j \in\{1, \ldots, r\}$.

Proof. From (2.2.2) we have that every element $s \in S$ can be written as a product of powers of commutators of the type $\left[y_{1}, z_{i_{1}}^{\alpha_{1}}, \ldots, z_{i_{u}}^{\alpha_{u}}\right]$ where $\alpha_{i} \neq 0$ and where $\left\{i_{1}, \ldots, i_{u}\right\}=\{1, \ldots, r\}$. If, for example, $i_{1}=i_{2}$ then since

$$
\left[y_{1}, z_{i_{1}}^{\alpha_{1}+\alpha}\right]\left[y_{1}, z_{i_{1}}^{\alpha_{1}}\right]^{-1}\left[y_{1}, z_{i_{2}}^{\alpha_{2}}\right]^{-1}=\left[y_{1}, z_{i}, z_{1}^{\alpha_{1}}, z_{i}^{\alpha}\right],
$$

we may replace this product by one of the desired type. That the $z^{\prime}$ s can be rearranged into increasing order of their subscripts follows since, modulo the bilaws of $\underset{\underline{m}}{ } \circ \underline{A}, y_{1}$ is in the centralizer of the derived group of a metabelian group.
(2.2.4) Corollary. Every sub-bivariety of $\triangleq 0$ A is determined by the bilaws of $A \circ$ A together with a set $\left\{y_{1}^{m}, z_{1}^{n}\right\} \cup T$ of special bilaws, where $m, n \geq 0$ and where every element of $T$ is a product of powers of commutators of the type

$$
\left[y_{1}, \mu_{1} z_{1}{ }^{\varepsilon_{1}}, \ldots, \mu_{r}{ }^{z}{ }_{r}^{\varepsilon_{r}}\right]
$$

with $\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{r}$ natural numbers and $\varepsilon_{1}, \ldots, \varepsilon_{r}= \pm 1$; moreover, if $\mathrm{n}>0$ then $\mu_{i}<n$ and $\varepsilon_{i}=1, i \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, r\}$.

Proof. Use (2.2.3) and the commutator identity

$$
\left[x, y^{\nu}\right]=\prod_{\mu=1}^{\nu}[x, \mu y]^{(\nu}\binom{\nu}{\nu}
$$

Finally, in this chapter, a result of a completely different character. Note that the bivariety $\underset{\underline{A}}{A}$ A consist of bigroups which are metabelian quad groups. One of the nice features of such groups, from a varietal standpoint, is that finitely generated ones are residually finite ([8]), and therefore every subvariety of $A A$ is generated by finite groups. We implicitly adapt this very deep result of Philip Hall to our situation, in the next theorem.
(2.2.5) Theorem. A bigroup $\underline{G}$ is residually finite quad bigroup if $G$ is residually finite. Consequently every sub-bivariety of $\xlongequal[\equiv]{A} \xlongequal[A]{A}$ is generated by finite bigroups.

Proof. Let $1 \neq g \in G$. There exists a normal subgroup $N$ of $G$ with $g \notin \mathbb{N}$ and $|G: N|$ finite. Write

$$
A_{1}(\underline{G}) \cap M=A_{1}^{*}, \quad A_{2}(\underline{G}) \cap i V=A_{2}^{*},
$$

and then $\left|A_{1}(\underline{G}): A_{1}^{*}\right|=\left|A_{1}(\underline{G}) \mathbb{N}: N\right|$ and $\left|A_{2}(\underline{G}): A_{2}^{*}\right|=\left|A_{2}(\underline{G}) \mathbb{N}: N\right|$ are both finite. Hence

$$
\left|G: A_{1}^{*} A_{2}^{A}\right| \leq\left|A_{1}(G): A_{1}^{*}\right| \cdot\left|A_{2}(G): A_{2}^{*}\right|
$$

is finite. Finally put $\mathbb{N}^{*}=\left(A_{1}^{*} A_{2}^{*}\right)^{G}$, and then $A_{1}^{*} A_{2}^{*} \leq \mathbb{N}^{*} \leq N$ so that $\mathbb{N}^{*}$ is normal, of finite index and avoids g , and it carries a sub-bigroup of $G$, so we are home.

## CHAPTER 3.

## CRITICAL BIGROUPS IN A $\circ$ A

In this chapter we define critical split-groups by analogy with critical groups, deduce some elementary facts about them, and then turn our attention to the structure of certain critical bigroups in $A \circ A$.

### 3.1 Critical split-groups

(3.1.1) Definition. A finite split-group is critical if it is not in the split-variety generated by its proper sub-split-groups and proper quotient split-groups.

Clearly we have
(3.1.2) Theorem. If $\underline{G}$ is a split-group and $G$ is a critical group, then $\underline{G}$ is critical.
(3.1.3) Theorem. A critical split-group $\underline{G}$ has a unique minimal normal sub-split-group.

Proof. If not, then there exist non-trivial normal sub-splitgroups $\mathbb{N}_{1}, \underline{N}_{2}$ of $G$ with $\mathbb{N}_{1} \cap \underline{N}_{2}=1$; and then $G$ can be embedded in $\underline{G} / \mathbb{N}_{1} \times \underline{G} / \mathbb{N}_{2}$ in the usual way.

An example of the situation in Theorem 3.1 .2 occurs with $G=S_{3}$, the symmetric group of permutations on three letters, $A_{1}(\underline{G})$ the normal 3 -cycle and $A_{2}(\underline{G})$ any 2-cycle. However the converse of (3.1.2) is not true: a critical split-group need not be a critical group. An example of this is the bigroup $\underline{G}$ carried by the wreath product $G=C_{p} w r\left(C_{p} \times C_{p}\right)$ in the natural way: $A_{1}(\underline{G})$ is the base group of $G$ and $A_{2}(\underline{G}) \cong C_{p} \times C_{p}$.

Clearly a split-group which is monolithic as a group has a unique, minimal normal sub-split-group. In certain cases the converse is true:
(3.1.4) Lemma. If $\underline{G}$ is a bigroup which has a unique minimal normal sub-bigroup, and $A_{1}(\underline{G})$ is abelian, then $G$ is monolithic.

Proof. Suppose that $1 \neq N$ is a normal subgroup of $G$. If $N \cap A_{1}(\underline{G})>1$ then we are finished since $N \cap A_{1}(\underline{G})$ carries a normal sub-bigroup of $G$. Hence suppose that $N \cap A_{1}(\underline{G})=1$; then as $A_{1}(\underline{G}) \triangleleft G$ we have that $\mathbb{N} \leq C_{G}\left(A_{1}(G)\right)$ and therefore that $C_{G}\left(A_{1}(\underline{G})\right)>A_{1}(\underline{G})$. It follows that $1<C_{G}\left(A_{1}(\underline{G})\right) \cap A_{2}(\underline{G}) \triangleleft G$. Hence we have a contradiction unless $A_{1}(\underline{G})=1$, in which case the theorem is trivially true.

In the bivariety $\xlongequal[\underline{A}]{A}$ A the conditions of (3.1.4) are certainly satisfied. In such cases we shall use 'monolithic' for brevity, and denote the monolith of $\underline{G}$ by $\sigma \underline{G}$. Note that the carrier of $\sigma \underline{G}$ is $\sigma G$.
(3.1.5) Lemma. If a split-variety $S$ is generated by finite split-groups then it is generated by critical split-groups.

Proof. Let $S_{0}$ be the sub-split-variety of $S$ generated by the
 $\underline{G} \varepsilon \underset{\sim}{S}-$ S $_{\sim}$, which we may suppose to have minimal order. Every proper sub-split-group and every proper quotient split-group of $\underline{G}$ then lies in $\underset{\sim}{S}{ }_{O}$, but $\underline{G}$ does not. This means that $\underline{G}$ is critical. We have thus produced a contradiction and hence ${\underset{\sim}{O}}^{S_{0}}=S_{\sim}$.
(3.1.6) Lemma (cf. Theorem 4 in [9]). If $\underline{G}$ is a critical bigroup and $A_{1}(\underline{G})$ is abelian, then $A_{1}(G)$ contains a unique maximal normal subgroup of $G$.

Proof. If $N_{1}, N_{2}$ are maximal normal subgroups of $G$ in $A_{1}(\underline{G})$, then $N_{1} A_{2}$, $N_{2} A_{2}$ carry sub-bigroups of $G$ (writing $A_{i}=A_{i}(\underline{G}), i=1,2$ ). We shall show that $G \in \operatorname{svar}\left\{N_{1}, A_{2}, N_{2} A_{2}\right\}$. Suppose that $q$ is a bilaw in both $N_{1} A_{2}$ and $N_{2} A_{2}$. Since ${ }^{i} N_{2} N_{2}=A_{1}$ and since $A_{2}\left(N_{1} A_{2}\right)=A_{2}$, we may suppose, by virtue of (2.2.2), that $q$ is a product of commutators of the form

$$
\left[y_{1}, w_{1}, \ldots, w_{t}\right]^{+1}
$$

for some words $W_{1}, \ldots, w_{t} \in A_{2}\left(\underline{Q}_{2}\right)$. Let $\alpha: \underline{Q}_{2} \rightarrow \underline{G}$ be an arbitrary morphism. We write $y_{1} \alpha=a_{1} a_{2}, a_{1} \varepsilon N_{1}, a_{2} \varepsilon N_{2}$ (not necessarily
uniquely). Define $\alpha_{j}: \underline{Q}_{2} \rightarrow N_{j} A_{2}, j=1,2$, by

$$
y_{1} \alpha_{j}=a_{j}, \quad z_{i} \alpha_{j}=z_{i} \alpha, \quad j=1,2, \quad i \in\{1,2, \ldots\}
$$

Then $\left[y_{1}, w_{1}, \ldots, w_{t}\right] \alpha=\left[y_{1}{ }^{\alpha}, w_{1} \alpha_{2} \ldots, w_{t}{ }^{\alpha}\right]=\left[y_{1} \alpha_{1}, w_{1} \alpha_{1}, \ldots, w_{t} \alpha_{1}\right]$. $\left[y_{1} \alpha_{2}, w_{1} \alpha_{2}, \ldots, w_{t} \alpha_{2}\right]$. Hence $q \alpha=\left(q \alpha_{1}\right)\left(q \alpha_{2}\right)=1$, showing that $q$ is a bilaw in G. This completes the proof.

Finally in this section an analogue of the well-known fact that critical groups which are nilpotent, are p-groups.

## (3.1.7) Theorem. If $G$ is a finite monolithic split-group

 and $G$ is nilpotent, then for some prime $p, G$ is a p-group.Proof. If $G$ is nilpotent and finite, its Slow subgroups are fully invariant, hence carry normal sub-split-groups whose pair-vise intersections are trivial, so $\underline{G}$ cannot be monolithic unless $G$ has only one Sylow subgroup.

Note that 'nilpotent' as used here is a concept related to varieties of groups. As previously, we may give it a split-varietal flavour, if that is thought necessary, by saying that a split-group of species $n$ is nilpotent if it has the split-law.

$$
\left[y_{11} y_{21} \cdots y_{n 1}, y_{12} y_{22} \cdots y_{n 2}, \cdots, y_{1 c} y_{2 c} \cdots y_{n c}\right]
$$

for some natural number c.
3. 2 Non-nilpotent critical bigroups in $\mathcal{I} \circ$ A.

Throughout the remainder of this chapter $\underline{G}=(G, A, B)$ will be a critical, non-nilpotent bigroup contained in $\underset{\equiv}{\text { A. }}$ A the notation introduced in Theorem 3.2 .1 will also be carried through.
(3.2.1) Theorem. If $\underline{G}=(G, A, B) \in \underset{\underline{A}}{\circ} \circ \underline{\underline{A}}$ is critical and not nilpotent, then

1) $A$ is a p-group, for some prime $p$, it is self-centralizing in $G$, and is the derived group $G_{(2)}=G^{\prime}$ of $G$.
If $B=H \times K$ where $H$ is the Sylow $p$-subgroup of $B$, then
ii) $F=A H$ is the centralizer of the monolith $\sigma G$ of $G$, and $F$ is the Fitting subgroup of $G$;
iii) $K$ is a $p^{\prime}$-cycle which acts faithfully and irreducibly on $\sigma G$ 。

Moreover
iv) Every non-trivial element of $K$ acts fixed point free on $A$, and
v) $\mathbb{K}$ acts faithfully and irreducibly on $A / N$
where
vi) $N=A^{P}[A, H]$ is the unique maximal $G$-normal subgroup of $A$.

Proof. Since $\underline{G}$ is critical it has a unique minimal normal sub-bigroup $\sigma \underline{G}$ whose carrier, by Lemma 3.1.4, is the monolith $\sigma G$ of $G$.

If A were not a p-group, we could write it as a direct product of Sylow subgroups, each of which, being characteristic in $A$ would be normal in $G$, contradicting the monolithicity of $G$; hence $A$ is a p-group for some prime $p$. If $A$ were not self-centralizing, then $A<C_{G}(A)$ would imply $1<C_{G}(A) \cap B \triangleleft G$, again contradicting the monolithicity of $G$.

Since $B$ is abelian, $G^{i} \leq A_{i}$ and since $G$ is not nilpotent, there exists an integer $t$ such that

$$
1 \neq G_{(t)}=G_{(t+1)}=\cdots \leq A .
$$

By a result of Schenknan [1], G splits over $G(t)^{\text {, say }}$

$$
G=G(t) \cdot B_{0}, \quad G(t) \cap B_{0}=1 .
$$

 is normal in $G$, $A \cap B_{0}$ is normal in $A$ since $A$ is abelian: hence $A \cap B_{0}$ is normal in $G$, and so $A \cap B_{0}=1$ because $G$ is monolithic and $A \cap B_{0}$ avoids $G(t)^{\text {. That is, }}$

$$
A \leq G(t) \leq G^{\prime} \leq A,
$$

or $G^{\prime}=A$. This disposes of (i).

We can describe $\sigma G$ more exactly: if $F$ has class $c$ precisely, and if $F_{(c)}$ has exponent $p^{r}$, then
(3.2.2) $\sigma G=F_{(c)}^{p^{\mathrm{p}-1}}=\left\{\begin{array}{ll}z \& Z(\mathbb{F}): z^{p}=1\end{array}\right\}$.

For, $\quad 1 \neq F_{(c)}^{\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{r}-1}}$ is characteristic in $F$ and therefore normal in $G$, so $\sigma G \leq \mathrm{F}^{\mathrm{p}}(\mathrm{c})$. If this inclusion were proper then, by Maschke's Theorem, of would have a nontrivial, K-admissible complement in $\mathrm{F}_{(\mathrm{c})}^{\mathrm{p}} \frac{\mathrm{r}-1}{\text { which, }}$, being in the centre of $F$, would be normal in $G$, a contradiction. A similar argument proves the remainder of (3.2.2).

The same argument can be used to prove that $K$ acts irreducibly on $\sigma G$. We shall now show not just that $K$ acts faithfully on $\sigma G$, but that every nontrivial element of $K$ acts fixed point free on $A$. To this end suppose that there exists $1 \neq k \varepsilon K$ and $1 \neq x \varepsilon A$ such that

$$
x^{k}=x .
$$

If we write

$$
\bar{A}=\left\{a \varepsilon A: a^{k}=a\right\},
$$

then $\bar{A}$ is a nontrivial normal subgroup of $G$ in $A$ and, by a well-known result of representation theory (for example, Lemma, p. 455 in [2]), $\bar{A}$ has a B-admissible complement $\overline{\bar{A}}$ in $A$. But then $\overline{\bar{A}}$ is normal in $G$
since $A$ is abelian, and therefore $\overline{\bar{A}}=1$ since $E$ is monolithic; that is $\bar{A}=A$. In this case $\langle k\rangle$ is central in $G$, contradicting the existence of a monolith in $G$. It follows that, if $1 \neq k \varepsilon K$, then $k$ fixes no non-trivial element of $A$. Thus $F$ is the centralizer of $\sigma G, K$ acts faithfully (and irreducibly) on $\sigma G$ and so $K$ is cyclic, and $F$ is the Fitting subgroup of $G$. This completes the proof of (ii), (iii), (iv).

By Lemma 3.1.6 there exists a unique maximal normal subgroup of $G$ contained in $A$ : call it $N$. Hence $A^{p}[A, H] \leq \mathbb{N}$ since both $A^{P}$ and $[A, H]=F^{\prime}$ are proper subgroups of $A$ and both are normal in $G$. If the inclusion is proper, then $T / A^{P}[A, H]$ has a non-trivial K-admissible complement $T / A^{P}[A, H]$ say, in $A / A^{P}[A, H]$. But then $T$ is normal in $G$ and $T$ is not contained in $N$, a contradiction to 3.1.6.

To finish the proof of the theorem we have to show that $\mathbb{K}$ acts faithfully on $A / N$, and to do this we use the following lemma which will be useful later on as well.
(3.2.3) Lemma. If $\underline{G}=(G, A, B)$ is as in (3.2.1) and $1 \neq k_{o} \varepsilon K$, then the mapping $a: A \rightarrow A$ defined by

$$
a \alpha=\left[a, k_{0}\right]
$$

is an automorphism of $A$ which extends to an automorphism of $G$.

Proof. Define $\alpha$ on the whole of $G$ by

$$
(b a) \alpha=b\left[a, k_{0}\right], \quad b \in B, \quad a \varepsilon A .
$$

This is an endomorphism since

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(\left(b_{1} a_{1}\right)\left(b_{2} a_{2}\right)\right) \alpha=\left(b_{1} b_{2} a_{1} a_{2}\right) \alpha=b_{1} b_{2}\left[a_{1} a_{2}, k_{0}\right] \\
= & b_{1} b_{2}\left[a_{1}, k_{0}\right]\left[a_{2}, k_{0}\right]=b_{1} b_{2}\left[a_{1}, k_{0}\right]^{b_{2}}\left[a_{2}, k_{0}\right] \\
= & b_{1}\left[a_{1}, k_{0}\right] \cdot b_{2}\left[a_{2}, k_{0}\right]=\left(b_{1} a_{1}\right) \alpha \cdot\left(b_{2} a_{2}\right) \alpha ;
\end{aligned}
$$

and $\alpha$ is an automorphism since $G$ is finite and $b\left[a, k_{0}\right]=1$ implies $b=1$ and $\left[a, k_{0}\right]=1$, which from (iv), gives $a=1$.

Finally note that if $a \varepsilon A, k_{o} \varepsilon K$ and $\left[a, k_{0}\right] \varepsilon N$, then, since $N$ is characteristic in $G, N$ admits the inverse of the automorphism a corresponding to $k_{0}$ in (3.2.3); that is

$$
a=\left[a, k_{0}\right] \alpha^{-1} \varepsilon N
$$

Hence $K$ acts faithfully on $A / \mathbb{N}$. The proof of Theorem 3.2.1 is now complete.

The following two lemmas are important in the proof of the crucial Theorem 3.4.4 below.
(3.2.4) Lemma. If $\underline{G}=(G, A, B)$ is as in (3.2.1) with $|\mathrm{K}|=\mathrm{r}$, and $\mathrm{a}_{0}, \ldots, a_{r-1} \in A$ such that, for all $k \in K$

$$
\mathrm{r}-1
$$

(3.2.5) $\prod_{i=0}\left[a_{i}, i k\right]=1$,
then $a_{0}=\ldots=a_{r-1}=1$.

Proof. Put $k=1$ and then $a_{0}=1$; we may suppose, therefore, that the product is over the range $1 \leq 1 \leq r-1$. Let $K=\left\langle k_{0}\right\rangle$. Substitute $k_{0}^{j}$, $1 \leq j \leq r-1$, for $k$ in (3.2.5) in turn, and, using the terminology of (3.2.3) with $\alpha_{j}$ corresponding to $k_{o}^{j}$, we get

$$
\prod_{i=1}^{r-1} a_{i} \alpha_{j}^{i}=1, \quad 1 \leq j \leq r-1 .
$$

Working in the endomorphism ring of $A$ and utilizing the fact that $\alpha_{i} \alpha_{j}=\alpha_{j} \alpha_{i}, \quad 1 \leq i, j \leq r-1$, we deduce that

$$
a_{t} \operatorname{det}\left(\alpha_{j}^{i}\right)=1, \quad 1 \leq t \leq r-1 .
$$

Now $\operatorname{det}\left(\alpha_{j}^{i}\right)$ is the van der Monde determinant, and

$$
\operatorname{det}\left(\alpha_{j}^{i}\right)=\left(\prod_{t=1}^{r-1} \alpha_{t}\right) \cdot\left(\pi_{u<v}\left(\alpha_{u}^{-\alpha}\right)\right)
$$

each $\alpha_{t}$ is an automorphism of $A$, and $\operatorname{det}\left(\alpha_{j}^{i}\right)$ will be an automorphism of A if we can show that for $u<v, \alpha_{u}-\alpha_{v}$ is an automorphism of $A$ : for $a \varepsilon A$,

$$
\left.\begin{array}{rl} 
& a\left(\alpha_{u}-\alpha_{v}\right)=\left(a \alpha_{u}\right)\left(a \alpha_{v}\right)^{-1}=\left[a, k_{0}^{u}\right]\left[a, k_{0}^{v}\right]^{-1} \\
= & a^{-1} a_{0}^{1 k_{0}^{u}} \cdot a^{-k} k_{0}^{v}=\left(a^{-1} a_{0}^{k-u}\right)^{-k}=\left[a, k_{0}^{u}\right. \\
v-u
\end{array}\right]_{0}^{-k_{0}^{u}} .
$$

and therefore $a\left(\alpha_{u}-\alpha_{v}\right)=1$ implies $a=1$ by (3.2.1) (iv). Hence $a_{1}=\ldots=a_{r-1}=1$ as asserted.
(3.2.6) Lemma. Let $G=(G, A, B)$ be as in (3.2.1) and $|K|=r$. If to each s-tuple $\underset{\sim}{\mu}=\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{s}\right)$, where $0 \leq \mu_{i} \leq r-1$, i $\varepsilon\{1, \ldots, s\}$ there is an element $a(\underset{\sim}{\mu})$ of A such that for all $k_{1}, \ldots, k_{s} \in k$,

$$
\underset{\sim}{\mu}\left[a(\underset{\sim}{\mu}), \mu_{1} k_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{s} k_{s}\right]=1,
$$

then $a(\underset{\sim}{\mu})=1$ for all $\underset{\sim}{\mu}$.

Proof. For each $\cup \varepsilon\{0, \ldots, r-1\}$ write

$$
a_{v}=\prod_{v=\mu_{s}}\left[a(\underset{\sim}{\mu}), \mu_{1} k_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{s-1}{ }_{s-1}\right]
$$

then

$$
\underset{\nu=0}{r-1}\left[a_{\nu}, \nu k_{s}\right]=1
$$

for all $k_{s} \varepsilon K$. Hence by (3.2.4), $a_{0}=\ldots=a_{r-1}=1$. We may now use induction to complete the proof.

### 3.3 The criticality of $G$.

We aim to show in this section, that if is as in (3.2.1), then $G$ is a critical group. By Lemma 3.1 .4 and (1.2) of [5] it suffices to show that $G$ is not contained in the variety generated by its proper subgroups. To this end we calculate the maximal subgroups of $G$.
(3.3.1) Lemma. If is a maximal subgroup of $G$ then either
a) $M=A H_{0}$, where $K_{0}$ is maximal in $K$;
b) $\mathrm{H}=\mathrm{AH}_{0} \mathrm{~K}$, where $\mathrm{H}_{0}$ is maximal in H , or c) $M \cap F=N H$.

Proof. Suppose that, as in (1.2.8), $\sigma_{1}$ is the retraction of $G$ to $B$. Then if $M \sigma_{1}<B$ we must have $A \leq M$; for, if $A \neq M$, $\mathrm{AM}=\mathrm{G}$ and therefore

$$
B=G \sigma_{1}=(A M) \sigma_{1}=M \sigma_{1} .
$$

Hence $M=A(1 \cap B)$ and clearly $M \cap B$ must be maximal in $B$; that is, $M$ has the form (a) or the form (b).

Assume, therefore, that $\sigma_{1}=B$ then $M \cap F=N H$. For, if N in, $G=N M$ and if a $\varepsilon A-N$,

$$
\text { (3.3.2) } a=x m, \quad x \in N, \quad m \in M
$$

and so $x^{-1} a=m \varepsilon(A-N)$ M. By virtue of (3.2.1)(vi), $A$ is generated quâ $B$-operator group by any element of $A-N$, and since $\mathrm{Mo}_{1}=\mathrm{B}$ and A is abelian,

$$
A=\langle m\rangle^{B}=\langle m\rangle^{1 /} \leq 11
$$

In other words, $M=G$; hence $N \leq M$. Tc finish off this case we show that if $a \varepsilon A-N$ and $h \in H$, then ha $\neq 1$. For, if $1 \neq k \varepsilon \mathbb{K}$, there exists $a^{\prime} \varepsilon A$ such that $k a^{\prime} \varepsilon M$; and if ha $\varepsilon M$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
{\left[k a^{\prime}, h a\right] } & =\left[k a^{\prime}, a\right]\left[k a^{\prime}, h\right]\left[k a^{\prime}, h, a\right] \\
& =[k, a]\left[a^{\prime}, h\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

belongs to $M$ whence, as $[A, H] \leq \mathbb{N} \leq M, \quad[k, a]^{-1}=[a, k] \varepsilon M$. From (3.2.1)(v), $[a, k] \varepsilon(A-N) \cap i$, and an argument similar to that which disposed of (3.3.2) shows that $M=G$. Hence ha $\ddagger M$. It follows at once that $M \sigma_{1}=B$ implies

$$
\mathrm{M} \cap \mathrm{~F}=\mathrm{NH},
$$

as required in (c).

Note that not all the maximal subgroups of $G$ are sub-bigroups. The ones which are not are those with $M \cap F=N H$ and ka $\varepsilon M$, a $\varepsilon \mathrm{A}-\mathrm{N}, \mathrm{k} \varepsilon \mathrm{K}$; in these cases, $\mathrm{M}=\langle\mathrm{NH}, \mathrm{ka}\rangle$. A similar argument to the foregoing yields
(3.3.3) Lemma. The maximal sub-bigroups of $\underline{G}$ are precisely $\mathrm{FK}_{0}, \mathrm{AH}_{0} \mathrm{~K}$ and NHK , where $\mathrm{H}_{0}$ is maximal in $\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{~K}_{0}$ is maximal in K。

We are now ready to prove
(3.3.4) Theorem. If $G=(G, A, B) \varepsilon \triangleq \circ \underline{\underline{A}}$ is critical and not nilpotent, then $G$ is a critical group.

Proof. Since $G$ is critical, there exists a bilaw $q$ of the maximal sub-bigroups of $G$ which is not a bilaw in $\underline{G}$ itself. Because of the nature of the maximal sub-bigroups of $\underline{G}, q$ must be a genuine commutator biword, and using (2.2.3) we may assume $q$ to take the form

$$
q=\prod_{i=1}^{S}\left[y_{1}, z_{1}^{\alpha}, \ldots, z_{r}^{\alpha_{i r}}\right]_{i}^{\varepsilon_{i}}
$$

where $\varepsilon_{i}= \pm 1, \alpha_{i j}>0, i \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, s\}, j \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, r\}$. Consider the word

$$
w=\prod_{i=1}^{s}\left[x_{1}, x_{2}, x_{3}^{\alpha}, \ldots, x_{r+2}^{\alpha}\right]
$$

Then $w$ is a law in every maximal subgroup of $G$, but not a law in $G$ itself. For, if $M$ is a maximal subgroup of $G$, then from (3.3.1) it follows that $\left(M^{\prime} \cdot M \sigma_{1}, M^{\prime}, M \sigma_{1}\right)$ is a proper sub-bigroup of $G$;
and each value of $w$ in is obtained by choosing arbitrary elements $m_{1}, \ldots, m_{r+2}$ of $M$ and evaluating

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \prod_{i=1}^{s}\left[m_{1}, m_{2}, m_{3}^{\alpha i 1}, \ldots, m_{r+2}^{\alpha_{i r}}{ }^{\varepsilon_{i}}\right. \\
= & \prod_{i=1}^{s}\left[m_{1}, m_{2},\left(m_{3} \sigma_{1}\right)^{\alpha_{i 1}}, \ldots,\left(m_{r+2} \sigma_{1}\right)^{\alpha}{ }_{i r_{1}}\right]_{i}^{\varepsilon_{i}}:
\end{aligned}
$$

this is clearly a value of $q$ in a proper sub-bigroup, and is therefore 1. Hence v is a law in in.

On the other hand, since $q$ is not a bilaw in $\underline{G}$, there exist elements a $\varepsilon A, b_{1}, \ldots, b_{r} \varepsilon B$ such that

$$
\prod_{i=1}^{s}\left[a, b_{1}^{\alpha}{ }^{i 1}, \ldots, b_{r}^{\alpha}{ }^{i r}\right]^{\varepsilon_{i}} \neq 1 .
$$

From (3.2.3), if $1 \neq k \varepsilon K$, there exists $a^{\prime} \in A$ with $a=\left[a^{\prime}, k\right]$ : it follows that $\prod_{i=1}^{s}\left[a^{\prime}, k, b_{1}^{\alpha}, \ldots, b_{r}{ }^{\alpha}\right]^{\varepsilon_{i}} \neq 1$ and therefore that $w$ is not a law in G. By the remark at the beginning of this section, G is critical. We shall see later that this theorem has a strong converse.

### 3.4 The bigroup $\mathrm{F}^{*}$

In this section we show that, in a sense, the bivariety generated by the critical bigroup $G$ is determined by the bivariety generated by a certain sub-bigroup of $\underline{G}$ which turns out to be a little more manageable.

Recall that (3.2.1)(vi) ensures that if $a_{0} \varepsilon A-N$, then $A$ is generated, qua $B$-operator group, by $a_{0}$. Suppose that one such $a_{0}$ is chosen and fixed from now on. Write $A_{0}=\left\langle a_{0}\right\rangle^{H}, F_{0}=A_{0} H$ and

$$
\underline{F}^{*}=\underline{F}_{0}=\left(F_{0}, A_{0}, H\right) .
$$

This definition depends on $a_{0}$ but is unambiguous up to isomorphism, as the following result shows.
(3.4.1) Lemma. If $a_{0}, a_{1} \varepsilon A-N$, then the mapping $a_{0} \rightarrow a_{1}$ can be extended to an isomorphism of the corresponding sub-bigroups $\mathrm{F}_{0}$ and $\mathrm{F}_{1}$.

Proof. Suppose that $r=r\left(a_{0}, h_{1}, \ldots, h_{t}\right)=1$ is a relation among the generating set $\left\{a_{0}\right\} \cup H$ for $F_{0}$. Every relation in $H$ is a relation in both $F_{0}$ and $F_{1}$, so we may assume that $r$ takes the form

$$
r=\prod_{i=1}^{t} a_{0}^{\alpha_{i} h_{i}}=1
$$

for some integers $\alpha_{i}$. Now there exist $b_{1}, \ldots, b_{u} \& B$ such that

$$
a_{1}=\prod_{i=1}^{u} a_{0}^{\beta_{i} b_{i}}
$$

for some integers $\beta_{i}$. Therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
r\left(a_{1}, h_{1}, \ldots, h_{t}\right) & =\prod_{i=1}^{t}\left\{\prod_{j=1}^{u} a_{0}^{\beta_{j} b_{j}} \alpha_{i} h_{i}\right. \\
& =\prod_{j=1}^{u}\left\{\prod_{i=1}^{t} a_{0} \alpha_{i} h_{i} \beta_{j} b_{j},\right. \\
& =1 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, by vo Dyck's Theorem, the mapping $a_{0} \rightarrow a_{1}$ and the identity mapping of $H$ extend to a morphism ${\underset{F}{0}}^{H} F_{-1}$. Similarly, the mapping $a_{1}+a_{0}$ and the identity mapping of $H$ extend to a morphism $\underline{F}_{1} \rightarrow{\underset{F}{0}}^{0}$. Consequently each is an isomorphism.
(3.4.2) Lemma. F and $\mathrm{F}^{*}$ generate the same bivariety.

The proof of this is similar to that of (3.1.6), and we omit it.

It would be pleasant if it turned out that $\mathrm{F}^{*}$ was a critical bigroup. However this is not in general the case. The best that can be said is (3.4.3) below. The trouble comes from the fact that F* need not be monolithic: this topic will be tale en up again briefly in Chapter 5.
(3.4.3) Lemma. If $G$ is as in (3.2.1), then $F^{*}$ is not in the bivariety generated by its proper sub-bigroups.

This will follow from the next theorem, which is much more important from our point of view in the next two chapters.
(3.4.4) Theorem. Let $q$ be a biword, $t$ a positive integer, and $p$ a prime which does not divide $t$. There exist biwords $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{v}$, depending on $q, t, p$ such that if $q$ is a bilaw in a non-nilpotent, critical bigroup $\underline{G} \varepsilon \underset{\underline{A}}{A} \xlongequal[\underline{\underline{A}}]{ }$ with $|K|=t$, and $\operatorname{exp\sigma G}=p$, then $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{v}$ are bilaws in $\underline{F}^{*}$. Conversely, if $\underline{G}_{1}=\left(G_{1}, A_{1}, H_{1} \times K_{1}\right) \varepsilon \underset{=}{A} \circ$ with $A_{1}, H_{1}$ arbitrary and $\exp K_{1} \mid t$, and $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{v}$ are bilaws in $\left(A_{1} H_{1}, A_{1}, H_{1}\right)$, then $q$ is a bilaw in $\underline{G}_{1}$.

Proof. If $q$ has one of the forms $y_{1}^{m}, z_{1}^{n}$ then the theorem is obviously true. Hence, using (2.2.4) we may assume

$$
q=\prod_{i=1}^{s}\left[y_{1}, \mu_{i 1} z_{1}^{\varepsilon_{i 1}}, \ldots, \mu_{i r}{ }^{z_{r}}{ }_{i r^{\prime}}{ }^{\alpha_{i}}\right.
$$

where $\mu_{i j}$ are all natural numbers, and $\varepsilon_{i j}= \pm 1$. Suppose that q is a bilaw of the non-nilpotent critical bigroup $\underline{G}$. Consider the biword

In this expression for $\mathrm{q}^{*}$ expand each commutator, using repeatedly the identity

$$
[x, \mu y z]=\prod_{\lambda=0}^{\mu} \prod_{v=\mu-\lambda}^{\mu}[x, \lambda y, v z]\left[\begin{array}{l}
\mu \\
\lambda
\end{array}\right)\binom{\lambda}{\lambda+v-\mu}
$$

modulo the bylaws of $\xlongequal[\underline{A}]{ } 0$. We get a product of powers of commutators each of which has $y_{1}$ as first entry and some $z \frac{+1}{j}, j \varepsilon\{r+1, \ldots, 3 r\}$ in each other entry. Working modulo the bilaws of $\mathcal{I} \circ \underline{\underline{A}}$ we can collect to the front of each commutator all $z_{j}^{+1}$ with $j \varepsilon\{r+1, \ldots, 2 r\}$.
Hence there exist biwords $q_{1}^{*}, \ldots, q_{u}^{*}$ such that, modulo $\xlongequal[\cong]{\cong} \xlongequal[A_{2}]{\left(Q_{2}\right) \text {, }}$

$$
q^{*}=\prod_{i=1}^{u}\left[q_{i}^{*}, \lambda_{i 1} z_{1+2 r^{n}}^{n_{i 1}} \ldots, \lambda_{i r}{ }^{z_{i r}}{ }^{n_{i r}}\right]
$$

where $q_{1}^{*}, \ldots, q_{u}^{*}$ are biwords which are products of powers of commutators each of which has as entries, $y_{1}$ in the first place, and $z \frac{+1}{j}, j \varepsilon\{r+1, \ldots, 2 r\}$ in the other places, and where $\eta_{i j}= \pm 1$, i $\varepsilon\{1, \ldots, u\}, j \varepsilon\{2 r+1, \ldots, 3 r\}$.

Now consider

$$
q^{* *}=\prod_{i=1}^{u}\left[q_{i}^{*}, \lambda_{i 1}{ }^{z_{i 1}} 1+2 r, \ldots, \lambda_{i r}{ }^{z}{ }_{3 r}^{\zeta}{ }_{i r}\right]
$$

where $\zeta_{i j}=\eta_{i j}$ if $n_{i j}=1$, and $\zeta_{i j}=t-1$ if $n_{i j}=-1$. Making repeated use of the identity

$$
\left[x, y^{\text {iN }}\right]=\prod_{\mu=1}^{N}[x, \mu y]\binom{N}{\mu}
$$

we can write, again modulo $\equiv \stackrel{A}{=}\left(\underline{Q}_{2}\right)$,

$$
q^{* *}=\prod_{i=1}^{v}\left[q_{i}, v_{i 1} z_{1+2 r}, \ldots, v_{i r} z_{3 r}\right] \cdot q^{\prime}
$$

where each $q_{i}$ is a linear combination of $q_{j}^{* \prime} s$, where $0 \leq v_{i j} \leq t-1$ all $i, j$, and where $q^{i}$ is a (possibly empty) product of powers of commutators in each of which at least one of $z_{1+2 r}, \cdots, z_{3 r}$ occurs raised to a power which is a multiple of $t$.

Mow suppose that $\alpha: \underline{\Omega}_{2} \rightarrow \underline{F}$ is arbitrary, and for the moment, fixed. With each choice $k_{1}, \ldots, k_{r} \varepsilon K$ and $\alpha$, associate a morphism $\beta: \underline{Q}_{2} \rightarrow \underline{G}$ such that

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
y_{i} \beta=y_{i} \alpha, & i \varepsilon\{1,2, \ldots\}, \\
z_{j+r} \beta=z_{j} \alpha, & z_{j+2 r^{\beta}}=k_{j}, \quad j \in\{1, \ldots, r\} .
\end{array}
$$

Then if $\beta^{*}: \underline{Q}_{2} \rightarrow \underline{G}$ is such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& y_{i} \beta^{*}=y_{i}, \quad \text { i } \varepsilon\{1,2, \ldots\}, \\
& z_{j} \beta^{*}=\left(z_{j} \alpha\right) \cdot k_{j}, \quad j \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, r\},
\end{aligned}
$$

we have

$$
1=q \beta^{*}=q * \beta=q * * \beta=\prod_{i=1}^{v}\left[q_{i} \alpha, v_{i l} k_{1}, \ldots, v_{i r} k_{r}\right],
$$

and this for all such $\beta$. Hence, by Lemma 3.2.6, $q_{i} \alpha=1$, i $\varepsilon\{1, \ldots, v\}$, and since $\alpha$ was arbitrary, $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{v}$ are bilaws in $E$ and so in $\mathrm{F}^{*}$.

Conversely suppose that $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{v}$ are bilaws in ( $A_{1} H_{1}, A_{1}, H_{1}$ ). Then if $\beta^{*}: Q_{2} \rightarrow G_{1}$ is any morphism we can construct $\alpha: \underline{Q}_{2} \rightarrow \underline{F}$ and $\beta: \underline{Q}_{2} \rightarrow \underline{G}_{1}$ reversing the procedure in the foregoing proof. Then so long as $\operatorname{expK}_{1} \mid t$ we have $q_{1} \alpha=\ldots=q_{v} \alpha=1$ implies $q \beta^{*}=1$ and so $q$ is a bilaw in $G_{-1}$.
(3.4.5) Remark. (i) It is clear from the proof of Theorem (3.4.4) that in the case when $q$ is a commutator biword, $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{v}$ do not depend at all on $p$. Also the forward part of the argument works if we assume no more than that K acts fixed point free on $A$, otherwise the criticality of $G$ is irrelevant.
(ii) The argument above is, of course,
essentially a trigroup argument. However it seems easier to treat it as we have done, then to develop the necessary conventions and terminology involved in considering $\underset{G}{ }$ as a trigroup.

Proof of (3.4.3). Since $G$ is critical, there is a biword $q$ which is a bilaw in every maximal sub-bigroup of $\underline{G}$, but not in $\underline{G}$ itself. In particular $q$ is a bilaw in the maximal sub-bigroups of the type

$$
\mathrm{AH}_{0} \mathrm{~K}, \quad \mathrm{NHK}, \quad H_{0} \text { maximal in } \mathrm{H} \text {. }
$$

Now in the proof of (3.4.4) the crucial property of $G$ was that $K$ acts fixed point free on $A=G^{3}$. It follows therefore, that if $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{v}$ correspond to $q$ by (3.4.4), then $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{v}$ are bylaws in all $\mathrm{AH}_{0}$ and in NH . However $\mathrm{q}_{1}, \ldots, \mathrm{q}_{\mathrm{v}}$ cannot all be bilaws in AH since $q$ is not a bilaw in $G$. It remains to remark that the maximal sub-bigroups of $F^{*}$ are precisely $\mathrm{Alt}_{0} \cap \underline{F}^{*}$ and $N_{0} H=N H \cap \underline{F}^{*}$ by an argument similar to that of (3.3.1), and that they generate the same bivarieties as their counterparts in AH.

## A FINITE BASIS THEOREM

### 4.0 Introduction

Our aim in this chapter is to prove the following theorems.
(4.0.1) Theorem. If $n$ is a natural number, the bivariety A $\circ A_{n}$ has descending chain condition on sub-bivarieties.
(4.0.2) Theorem. If $m$ is a natural number, the bivariety $A_{\mathrm{m}} \circ$ A has descending chain condition on sub-bivarieties.

Then, by virtue of Theorems $2.1 .1,2.1 .2$, and a relatively simple argument, one has
(4.0.3) Theorem. Every sub-bivariety of $A_{=m} \circ \underset{\equiv}{A} \vee \underset{\equiv}{A} \circ A_{n}$ has a finite basis for its bilaws.
4.1 $\stackrel{A}{\equiv} \circ{\underset{n}{n}}^{n}$ reduction to the case $n=p^{\nu}$.

$$
{\underset{\sim}{B}}_{B_{1}}^{{ }_{\sim}^{B}} 2 \supseteq-{ }_{\sim}^{B_{i}} \supseteq \cdots
$$

 i $\varepsilon\{1,2, \ldots\}$ write

$$
{\underset{\sim}{i}}_{C_{i}}=\operatorname{svar}\left\{\underline{G} \in{\underset{\sim}{i}}^{B_{i}}: \exp A_{2}(\underline{G})<n\right\}
$$

and

$$
{\underset{\sim}{D}}^{i}=\operatorname{svar}\left\{\underline{G} \varepsilon{\underset{\sim}{i}}^{B}: \underline{G} \text { critical, } \exp A_{2}(\underline{G})=n\right\}
$$

 descending chains, and
(4.1.1) $\quad C_{\sim}^{C} \subseteq V\left\{\underset{\underline{A}}{ } \rho^{A_{t}}: t \neq n, t \mid n\right\}$.

We turn our attention to the chain of the ${ }_{\sim}^{D}{ }_{i}$ 's.
(4.1.2) Lemma. The chain ${\underset{\sim}{D}}_{1} \supseteq{ }_{\sim}^{\mathrm{D}} \mathrm{D}_{2} \supseteq \cdots \geq{ }_{\sim}^{\mathrm{D}} \geq \cdots$ breaks
 bivarieties, where $\mathrm{p}^{\lambda} \| \mathrm{n}$.

Proof. With each prime $p$, each natural number $t \mid n$, and each i $\varepsilon\{1,2, \ldots\}$ associate the bivariety

$$
\begin{gathered}
{\underset{\sim}{D}}_{i}(p, t)=\operatorname{svar}\left\{\underline{G} \varepsilon \underset{\sim}{B} \mathcal{B}^{\prime}: \underline{G} \text { critical, } \exp A_{2}(\underline{G})=n,\right. \\
\operatorname{exp\sigma } \underset{G}{G}=p,|K|=t\}
\end{gathered}
$$

where in the case $\underline{G}$ is critical and nilpotent we interpret $K=1$. Clearly then

$$
{ }_{\sim}^{D}(p, t) \geq{ }_{\sim}^{D}(p, t) \geq \cdots \geq{ }_{\sim}^{D}(p, t) \geq \cdots
$$

is a descending chain, and for all i $\varepsilon\{1,2, \ldots\}$,

$$
\underset{\sim}{D}=v\left\{{\underset{\sim}{D}}^{D}(p, t): \text { p prime, } t \mid n\right\} .
$$

Define

$$
\begin{gathered}
{\underset{\sim}{i}}_{*}^{*}(p, t)=\operatorname{svar}\left\{\underline{F}^{*}: G \underline{G} \varepsilon{\underset{\sim}{i}}^{B^{\prime}} \underline{G} \text { critical, } \exp A_{2}(\underline{G})=n,\right. \\
\operatorname{exp\sigma } \underline{G}=p,|K|=t\}
\end{gathered}
$$

where we interpret $\underline{F}^{*}=\underline{G}$ in the case $\underline{G}$ critical and nilpotent. Then for each prime $p$ and $t \mid n$,

$$
{\underset{\sim}{D}}_{D_{1}^{*}}(p, t) \geq{ }_{\sim}^{D}(p, t) \geq \cdots \geq{ }_{\sim}^{D_{1}^{*}}(p, t) \geq \cdots
$$

is a descending chain.

Next suppose that the chain ${\underset{\sim}{1}}_{*}^{*}(p, t) \supseteq{\underset{\sim}{2}}_{D_{2}^{*}}(p, t) \supseteq \cdots$ breaks off; that is, for some natural number $\ell, \ell \leq i$ implies

$$
\underset{\sim}{D_{i}^{*}}(p, t)=\underset{\sim}{D_{i}^{*}} \underset{1}{*}(p, t) .
$$

If $q$ is a bilaw of $\underset{\sim}{D_{i+1}}(p, t)$, let $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{v}$ be the biwords corresponding to $t, p, q$ according to Theorem 3.4.4. Then $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{v}$ are bilaws in $\underset{\sim}{D}{ }_{i+1}^{*}(p, t)$ and therefore in $\underset{\sim}{D} \underset{1}{*}(p, t)$, whence, using (3.4.2) and the converse part of (3.4.4), $q$ is a bilaw in ${\underset{\sim}{D}}_{D_{i}}(p, t)$. It follows that for $\ell \leq i$,

$$
{\underset{\sim}{D}}(p, t)=D_{\sim} i+1(p, t)
$$

The proof of the lemma is now nearly complete: we need only the following lemma.
(4.1.3) Lemma. If $\left\{\underline{G}_{i}: i \in I\right\}$ is an infinite set of nonisomorphic, non-nilpotent, critical bigroups belonging to $A 0 A_{n}$ such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { i) } \quad A_{1}\left(\underline{G}_{i}\right)=F\left(G_{i}\right), \quad i \varepsilon I, \\
& \text { ii) } \quad\left|A_{2}\left(\underline{G}_{i}\right)\right|=n>1, \quad i \varepsilon I,
\end{aligned}
$$

then $\operatorname{svar}\left\{\underline{G}_{i}: i \varepsilon I\right\}=\mathcal{A}_{\underline{A}} 0 \underline{A}_{n}$.

Proof. Under the conditions imposed, each $G_{i}$ is a critical group, by Theorem 3.3.4. According to Mosey [4, Theorem 4.2.2], $G_{i}$ is determined uniquely (up to isomorphism) by the invariants $\exp G_{i}, n$. Hence, since there are an infinity of non-isomorohic $G_{i}$ 's, $\exp G_{i}^{?}$ is unbounded.

We next employ (3.4.4). Let $q$ be a bilaw in all $G_{i}$. Then we may assume that $q$ is either $z_{1}^{N}$ where $n / N$, or a genuine commutator biword. In the first case $q$ is a bilaw of $A \circ A_{n}$, and in the second, note that if $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{v}$ correspond to $q$ by (3.4.4), they are independent of $p$ (as noted in (3.4.5) \%, and $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{v}$ are bilaws in every bigroup $(A, A, 1)$. Hence $q$ is a bilaw in every bigroup of $A \circ A_{n}$.

Returning to the proof of (4.1.2), note that if $p \neq n$, then ${\underset{\sim}{D}}^{D}(p, t)$ is trivial unless $m=n$; and by (4.1.3), ${\underset{\sim}{D}}^{D}(p, n)$ is non-trivial for only finitely many primes $p$. Hence there is a finite set $\pi$ of primes such that

$$
\underset{\sim}{D_{i}}=v\{{\underset{\sim}{i}}(p, t): p \varepsilon \pi, t \mid n\}
$$

 break off. This completes the proof.
 and only if both the chains ${\underset{\sim}{1}}^{C_{1}} \mathbb{C}_{\sim} \supseteq \cdots$ and ${\underset{\sim}{1}}^{D_{1}} \geq{\underset{\sim}{2}}^{D_{2} \geq \cdots}$ break off. We make the hypothesis
(4.1.4) Inductive Hypothesis. For every natural number $n_{0}<n$ $\stackrel{A}{=} A_{n_{0}}$ has descending chain condition on sub-bivarieties.

Whenever $n$ is not a prime power we have made the inductive step in (4.1.1) and (4.1.2). Since $\xlongequal{A} \circ{\underset{A}{A}}^{A_{1}}$ clearly has descending chain condition on sub-bivarieties, it remains to deal with the case when $n$ is a prime power, $n=p^{\nu}$ say.

### 4.2 Preliminary lemmas

We change our point of view from now on and consider not descending

 to consider the split-free bigroup ${\underset{F}{(1, \omega)}}^{\left(A_{p} \circ{\underset{\sim}{A}}^{A_{v}}\right) \text { : }}$
(4.2.1) Lemma. The lattices of normal, fully invariant subbigroups of $F_{(\omega, \omega)}\left(\underset{=}{A} \circ{\underset{p}{A}}_{=}\right)$and $F_{(1, \omega)}\left(\underset{A_{0}}{A_{0}}\right)$ are isomorphic.

Proof. We use ( 1.5 .10 ), imagining $\underline{Q}(1, \omega)$ embedded in $\underline{Q}_{2}$ in a natural way. Consider the mapping $\xi$ from the lattice of normal,
 of ${ }^{A}{ }_{\underline{A}}^{\underline{A}} \nu$ to the lattice of normal, fully invariant sub bigroups of $\underline{Q}(1, \omega)$ containing $\underset{\underline{A}}{0} \underset{\underline{p}}{\underline{A}}(\underline{Q}(1, \omega))$, defined by

$$
\underline{\mathrm{S}} \xi=\underline{\mathrm{S}}(\underline{Q}(1, \omega)) .
$$

Now $\xi$ is onto by (1.4.11), clearly preserves inclusions, and by (1.5.10) is an intersection-homomorphism; it is easy to see that $\xi$ is then a
 $\mathrm{S}_{\sim} \neq \underset{\sim}{S_{2}}$ then there exists $\mathrm{q} \varepsilon\left(\underline{Q}(1, \omega) \sim \underline{S}_{1}\right)-\underline{S}_{2}$, say, by virtue of (2.2.3) and so, from (1.5.10), $\underline{Q}(1, \omega) \underline{S}_{1} \neq \underline{Q}(1, \omega) \cap \underline{S}_{2}$ implies $\left.S_{1} \underline{(Q}(1, \omega)\right) \neq S_{2}(\underline{Q}(1, \omega))$. This completes the proof.
 $A_{1}\left(\underline{W}_{\nu}\right), \quad B=A_{2}\left(\underline{W}_{\nu}\right)$. For the split-free generating set of $\underline{W}_{\nu}$ write $\left\{y_{1}\right\}\left\{z_{1}, z_{2}, \ldots, z_{i}, \ldots\right\}$ : no confusion will result from this.

We will abuse language to the extent of calling elements of $\underset{\sim}{W}$ biwords.

From Theorem 1.6.2 we have that

$$
W_{\nu}=C \text { wr } F_{\omega}\left({\underset{\underline{p}}{\nu}}^{(A)}\right.
$$

where $C$ is an infinite cycle and where $A$ is the base group of $W_{v}$ and $B=F\left({ }_{\omega}\left({ }_{p}{ }_{\nu}\right)\right.$. Our aim is to prove
(4.2.3) Theorem. All ascending chains of normal, fully invariant sub-bigroups of $\underline{W}_{v}$ break off.

It is worth noting here
(4.2.4) Lemma. Every fully invariant sub-bigroup of $\underline{W}_{V}$ contained in $A$ is normal in $\underline{W}_{V^{*}}$

Proof. This follows since elements of $B$ induce self-morphisms of $\underline{W}_{v^{2}}$ and $A$ is abelian.
(4.2.5) Lemma. If $\underline{U}$ is a normal sub-bigroup of $\underline{W}_{v^{s}}$ and if for fixed elements $a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m} \varepsilon A$, and $a l l$ b $\varepsilon B$

$$
{\underset{i=1}{m}\left[a_{i}, b^{i}\right] \varepsilon \underline{U}, ~}_{\text {in }}
$$

then for all $b_{1}, \ldots, b_{m} \varepsilon B, \prod_{j=u}^{m}\left[a_{j}, b_{1}^{j}, \ldots, b_{u}^{j-u+1}\right] \varepsilon U$, $u \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, m\}$.

Proof. For $u=1$ the assertion is the hypothesis. Suppose, therefore, that for some $u \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, m-1\}$ the lemma is true. If $b_{1}, \ldots, b_{u+1} \varepsilon B$ are arbitrarily chosen, then

$$
\prod_{j=u}^{m}\left[a_{j}, b_{1}^{j}, \ldots,\left(b_{u} b_{u+1}\right)^{j-u+1}\right] \varepsilon U .
$$

That is,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \prod_{j=u}^{m}\left[a_{j}, b_{1}^{j}, \ldots, b_{u}^{j \cdots u+1}\right]\left[a_{j}, b_{1}^{j}, \ldots, b_{u-1}^{j \cdots u+2}, b_{u+1}^{j-u+1}\right] \\
& {\left[a_{j}, b_{1}^{j}, \ldots, b_{u}^{j-u+1}, b_{u+1}^{j-u+1}\right] \varepsilon U }
\end{aligned}
$$

and from here, using our inductive hypothesis, we obtain that

$$
\prod_{j=u}^{m}\left[a_{j}, b_{1}^{j}, \ldots, b_{u}^{j-u+1}, b_{u+1}^{j-u+1}\right] \varepsilon U .
$$

Since $U$ is normal we have $\prod_{j=u}^{m}\left[a_{j}, b_{1}^{j}, \ldots, b_{u}^{j-u+1}, b_{u+1}\right] \varepsilon U$ and so

$$
{\underset{j=u}{m}\left[a_{j}, b_{1}^{j}, \ldots, b_{u}^{j-u+l_{b}}{ }_{u+1}\right]^{-1}\left[a_{j}, b_{1}^{j}, \ldots, b_{u}^{j-u+1}, b_{u+1}^{j-u+1}\right] \varepsilon U .}^{j}
$$

Finally, using the commutator identity $[x, y]^{-1}\left[x, y^{t}\right]=\left[x, y^{t-1}\right]^{y}$ for all integers $t$, we have

$$
\prod_{j=u+1}^{m}\left[a_{j}, b_{1}^{j}, \ldots, b_{u+1}^{j-u}\right]^{b+1} \varepsilon U,
$$

which, since $\underline{U}$ is normal, gives what we want.

This lemma will prove useful in a number of places: first as the initial step of an induction in the proof of Lemma 4.2.10 below, and later in dealing with the structure of certain metabelian varieties.
(4.2.6) Notation. If $\underline{U}$ is normal in ${\underset{\sim}{W}}^{W}$ define the subbigroups $\underline{U}_{i}$ of $\underline{W}_{V}$ for $i \varepsilon\{0,1, \ldots\}$ by

$$
U_{i} / U=Z_{i}\left(W_{V} / U\right),
$$

where $Z_{i}\left(W_{V} / U\right)$ is the $i$-th term of the upper central series of $W_{\nu} / \mathrm{U}$ (see, for example, p. 77 in [3]).

Note that if $a \in A$, then $\left[a, b_{1}, \ldots, b_{r}\right] \varepsilon U$ for $a l l b_{1}, \ldots, b_{r} \varepsilon B$ if and only if a $\varepsilon U_{r}$.
(4.2.7) Lemma. If to the hypotheses of (4.2.5) we add $m \leq p-1$, then for $i \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, m\}, a_{i} \varepsilon U_{m}$.

Proof. From (4.2.5),

$$
\left[a_{m}, b_{1}^{m}, \ldots, b_{m-1}^{2}, b_{m}\right] \varepsilon U
$$

for $a l l b_{1}, \ldots, b_{m} \varepsilon B$. Since $1,2, \ldots, m$ are all prime to $p$, we have $a_{m} \varepsilon U_{m}$.

Assume that it has been proved that $a_{i+1} \varepsilon U_{m}, \ldots, a_{m} \varepsilon U_{m}$ for some $i \geq 1$. Then since $\prod_{j=1}^{m}\left[a_{j}, b_{1}^{j}, \ldots, b_{i}^{j-i+1}\right] \varepsilon U$, we have by commuting with $b_{i+1}, \ldots, b_{m}$ that $\left[a_{i}, b_{1}^{i}, \ldots, b_{i}, b_{i+1}, \ldots, b_{m}\right] \varepsilon U$ and hence, as before, $a_{i} \varepsilon U_{m}$. This completes the proof.
(4.2.8) Lemma. If $\underline{U}$ is normal in $\underset{\sim}{W}$ and if for fixed elements $a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m} \varepsilon A$ and $a l l \quad b \varepsilon B$,

$$
\rho=\prod_{i=1}^{m}\left[a_{i}, b^{i}\right] \varepsilon U
$$

then
i)

$$
\left(\left[a_{t}, b^{p}\right]\left[a_{t+p}, b^{2 p}\right] \ldots\right) \varepsilon U_{m-1}, p \leq t \leq 2 p-1
$$

$$
\left(\left[a_{u}, b^{u}\right]\left[a_{u+p}, b^{u+p}\right] \ldots\right) \varepsilon U_{m+p-2}, 1 \leq u \leq p-1
$$

$$
\left(a_{v} a_{v+p} \ldots\right) \varepsilon U_{m+p-2}, 1 \leq v \leq p-1
$$

In the proof of this lemma we need the following notation and Lemma 4.2.10 below.
(4.2.9) Notation. If $b_{1}, \ldots, b_{m}$ are arbitrary elements of $B$, write

$$
c(s, u, v, i)=\left[a_{s+i p}, b_{1}^{s+i p}, \ldots, b_{s-u p+v}^{u p-v+i p+1}, b_{s-(u-1) p+1}^{(u+i-1) p}, \ldots, b_{s-p+1}^{(i+1) p}\right]
$$

where $s \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, m\}$, $i \varepsilon\{0, \ldots, \ell\}$ where $\ell=[(m-s) / p]$, $v \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, p\}$ and where $u$ has the range:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& u \in\{1, \ldots, s / p\} \text { if } p / s ; \\
& u \in\{1, \ldots,[s / p]+1\} \text { if } p \not s,
\end{aligned}
$$

with the conventions:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& s-u p+v \leq 0 \text { implies } c(s, u, v, i)=\left[a_{s+i p}, b_{s-(u-1) p+1}^{(u+i-1) p}, \ldots, b_{s-p+1}^{(i+1) p}\right] ; \\
& s-u p+v \leq s<s-(u-1) p+1 \text { implies } \\
& c(s, u, v, i)=\left[a_{s+i p}, b_{1}^{s+i p}, \ldots, b_{s-u p+v}^{u p-v+i p+1}\right] ; \\
& s<s-u p+v \text { implies } c(s, u, v, i)=\left[a_{s+i p}, b_{1}^{s+i p}, \ldots, b_{s}^{i p+1}\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

Also write

$$
\rho(s, u, v)=\pi^{\prime} c(s, u, v, 0)=\prod_{i=0}^{\ell} c(s, u, v, i),
$$

and

$$
\pi^{\prime} a_{s}=a_{s} a_{s+p} \cdots a_{s+\ell p} .
$$

(4.2.10) Lemma. If $\rho$ is as in (4.2.8) then

$$
\rho(s, u, v) \in U_{r}
$$

for all relevant $s, u, v$, where $r=m-s+u(p-1)-v+1$.

Proof. From (4.2.5) we have

$$
\rho(m, 1, p)=\left[a_{m}, b_{1}^{m}, \ldots, b_{m-1}^{2}, b_{m}\right] \varepsilon U ;
$$

and in this expression we may replace $b_{i}^{m-1+1}$ by $b_{i}$ whenever $p+m-i+1$. Hence

$$
\rho(m, u, v)=\left[a_{m}, b_{1}^{m}, \ldots, b_{m-u p+v}^{u p-v+1}, b_{m-(u-1) p+1}^{(u-1) p}, \ldots, b_{m-p+1}^{p}\right]
$$

for all relevant $u, v$, and therefore

$$
\rho(m, u, v) \in U_{r}
$$

where $r=m-(m-u p+v+u-1)=u(p-1)-v+1$. We use this as the start of an induction, the induction being taken over the lexicographically ordered set of triples $(-s, u,-v)$. Suppose, therefore, that for all $(-s, u,-v)<(-t, w,-x+1)$ where $x \in\{2, \ldots, p\}$, the assertion of the lemma is true.

First note that from Lemma 4.2.5 we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\prod_{j=t}^{m}\left[a_{j}, b_{1}^{j}, \ldots, b_{t}^{j-t+1}\right] & =\underset{j=t}{t+p-1} \rho(j, 1, t+p-j) \\
& \varepsilon U .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, by the inductive hypothesis we deduce from this that

$$
\rho(t, 1, p) \varepsilon U_{m-t}
$$

as required. Second,

$$
\rho(t, w, x)=\prod_{i=0}^{\ell} c(t, w, x, i)
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& c(t, w, x, i)=\left[a_{t+i p}, b_{1}^{t+i p_{1}}, \ldots, b_{t-w p+x}^{w p-x+1 p+1}, b_{t-(w-1) p+1}^{(w+i-1) p}, \ldots, b_{t-p+1}^{(i+1) p}\right] \\
= & {\left[a_{t+i p}, b_{1}^{t+i p}, \ldots, b_{t-w p+x-1}^{w p-x+i p+2}, b_{t-(w-1) p+1}^{(w+i-1) p}, \ldots, b_{t-p+1}^{(i+1) p}, b_{t-w p+x}^{w p-x+i p+1}\right] } \\
= & {\left[c(t, w, x-1, i), b_{t-w p+x}^{w p-x+1}\right] } \\
\times & {\left[a_{t+i p}, b_{1}^{t+i p}, \ldots, b_{t-w p+x-1}^{w p-x+1 p+2}, b_{t-(w-1) p+1}^{(w+i-1) p}, \ldots, b_{t-p+1}^{(i+1) p}, b_{t-w p+x}^{i p}\right] }
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore

$$
\rho(t, w, x)=\left[\rho(t, w, x-1), b_{t-w p+x}^{w p-x+1}\right] \cdot \rho^{\prime}(t+p, w+1, x-1)^{b_{t-w p+x}^{w p-x+1}}
$$

where $\rho^{\prime}(t+p, w+1, x-1)$ differs from $\rho(t+p, w+1, x-1)$ only in that the element $b_{(t+p)-p+1}$ occurs as $b_{t-w p+x} ;$ in any event
$\rho^{\prime}(t+p, w+1, x-1)^{b_{t-w p+x}^{w p-x+1}}$ belongs to $U_{r}$ where $r=m-(t+p)+(w+1)(p-1)-(x-1)+1=m-t+w(p-1)-x+1$, by the induction hypothesis. Hence since also $\rho(\mathbb{t}, W, x) \varepsilon U_{r}$ by the inductive hypothesis,

$$
\left[\rho(t, w, x-1), b_{t-w p+x}^{w p-x+1}\right] \varepsilon U_{r}
$$

and the fact that $w p-x+1$ is prime to $p$ under the assumptions
on $x$, and that $b_{t-w p+x}$ does not occur in $\rho(t, w, x-1)$, means that

$$
\rho(t, w, x-1) \varepsilon U_{r+1}
$$

as required.

Finally, note that for $u \geq 2$,

$$
\rho(s, u, p)=\rho(s, u-1,1)
$$

and this completes the induction, and the proof of (4.2.10).

$$
\text { Proof of (4.2.8). Put } s=p, u=1, v=1 \quad \text { in (4.2.10) and }
$$ we get

$$
\prod_{i=0}^{\ell}\left[a(i+1) p, b_{1}^{(i+1) p}\right] \varepsilon U_{m-1}
$$

If $p<s \leq 2 p-1$, put $u=2, v=2 p-s$ and we get

$$
\prod_{i=0}^{\ell}\left[a_{s+i p}, b_{s-p+1}^{(i+1) p}\right] \varepsilon U_{m-1}
$$

and these together are just the assertion (i).

To prove ( iii) proceed as follows. Note that for $p \leq j \leq 2 p-1, \quad\left[a_{j}, b_{1}^{j}\right]=c(p, 1,1,0) \quad$ if $\quad j=p$ and $\left[a_{j}, b_{1}^{j}\right]=$ $c(j-p, 1,2 p-j+1,1)$ if $p<j$ : hence in the following argument, $\Pi^{\prime}$ notation can be used. We have

$$
\rho=\prod_{i=1}^{p-1}\left[a_{i}, b_{1}^{i}\right] \cdot \prod_{j=p}^{2 p-1}\left\{\Pi^{\prime}\left[a_{j}, b_{1}^{j}\right]\right\}
$$

$$
=\prod_{i=1}^{p-1}\left[a_{i}, b_{1}^{i}\right] \cdot \prod_{j=p}^{2 p-1}\left\{\left(\pi^{\prime}\left[a_{j}, b_{1}^{p}\right]\right)^{b_{1}^{j-p}} \cdot\left[\pi^{\prime} a_{j}, b_{1}^{j-p}\right]\right\}
$$

(Here $\Pi^{\prime}\left[a_{j}, b_{1}^{p}\right]=\left[a_{j}, b_{1}^{p}\right]\left[a_{j+p}, b_{1}^{2 p}\right] \ldots$ is a harmless abuse of notation). By part (i) we have then

$$
\prod_{i=1}^{p-1}\left[a_{i}, b_{1}^{i}\right] . \prod_{j=p+1}^{2 p-1}\left[\pi^{\prime} a_{j}, b_{1}^{j-p}\right] \varepsilon U_{m-1}
$$

and therefore

$$
\prod_{i=1}^{p-1}\left[\pi^{\prime} a_{i}, b_{1}^{i}\right] \varepsilon U_{m-1}
$$

Then from Lemma 4.2.7,

$$
\pi^{\prime} a_{i} \varepsilon U_{m+p-2}
$$

for all i $\varepsilon\{1, \ldots, p-1\}$, and this completes the proof of (iii).

The proof of (ii) uses (i), (iii) and the identity
(4.2.11) $\Pi^{\prime}\left[a_{v}, b_{1}^{v}\right]=\left[\Pi^{\prime} a_{v}, b_{1}^{v}\right] . \Pi^{\prime}\left[a_{p+v}, b_{1}^{p}\right]^{b_{1}^{v}}$
for $v \in\{1, \ldots, p-1\}$ (where $\pi^{\prime}\left[a_{p+v}, b_{1}^{p}\right]=\left[a_{p+v}, b_{1}^{p}\right]\left[a_{2 p+v}, b_{1}^{2 p}\right] \ldots$ is again an abuse of notation). The proof of (4.2.8) is now complete.
(4.2.12) Definition. An element of $\underset{V}{W}$ which belongs to the subgroup generated by the set $\left\{y_{1}\right\} \cup\left\{z_{1}^{p}, z_{2}^{p}, \ldots, z_{i}^{p}, \ldots\right\}$ will be called a t-biword.
(4.2.13) Lemma. If $q \in A$, then there exist t-biwords $q_{1},,,, q_{d}$ and a natural number $v$ such that

$$
\operatorname{cl}\left\{q_{1}, \ldots, q_{d}\right\} \geq \operatorname{cl}\{q\} \geq \operatorname{cl}\left\{\left[q_{1}, v B\right] ; \quad 1 \leq 1 \leq d\right\}
$$

Moreover if $q$ is special, so are $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{d}$. (As usual, [ $\left.\mathrm{q}_{\mathrm{i}}, \mathrm{vB}\right]$ stands for the subgroup generated by the commutators $\left.\left[q_{i}, b_{1}, \ldots, b_{v}\right], b_{1}, \ldots, b_{v} \varepsilon B\right)$.

The proof of this lemma depends on the following consideration.
(4.2.14) Lemma. If $q^{*} \varepsilon A$ is a special biword, say involving the variables $y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{s}$ precisely, then there exist special biwords $q_{1}^{*}, \ldots, q_{r}^{*}$ in which $z_{s}$, if it occurs at all, does so raised to a power which is a multiple of $p$, and $q_{1}^{*}, \ldots, q_{r}^{*}$ involve no variables other than $y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{s} ;$ and there exists a natural number $v^{*}$ such that

$$
\operatorname{cl}\left\{\mathrm{q}_{1}^{*}, \ldots, \mathrm{q}_{\mathbf{r}}^{*}\right\} \geq \operatorname{cl}\left\{\mathrm{q}^{*}\right\} \geq \operatorname{cl}\left\{\left[\mathrm{q}_{\mathrm{i}}^{*}, \mathrm{v}^{*} \mathrm{~B}\right]: \quad 1 \leq i \leq \mathrm{r}\right\} .
$$

Proof. We may write

$$
q^{*}=\prod_{i=1}^{t}\left[y_{1}, z_{1}^{\lambda} i 1, \ldots, z_{s}^{\lambda_{i s}}\right]_{i}^{\alpha_{i}}
$$

where $0<\lambda_{i j} \leq p^{\nu}-1$ for all $i, j$. For $j \varepsilon\left\{1, \ldots, P^{\nu}-1\right\}$ define

$$
a_{j}=\left\{\prod _ { j = \lambda _ { i s } } \left[y_{1}, z_{1}^{\lambda_{i 1}}, \ldots, z_{s-1}^{\left.\lambda_{i s-1}\right]}{ }^{\alpha_{i}}, \exists i, j=\lambda_{i s},\right.\right.
$$

1, otherwise.

Then $q^{*}=\prod_{i=1}^{\nu}-1 \quad\left[a_{j}, z_{s}^{j}\right]$. Since by construction the $a_{j}^{\prime}$ 's do not involve $z_{s}$, the hypotheses of Lemma 4.2.8 are satisfied, with $U=c l\left\{q^{*}\right\}$. Hence

$$
\begin{gathered}
\Pi^{\prime}\left[a_{u}, z_{s}^{p}\right]=\left[a_{u}, z_{s}^{p}\right]\left[a_{u+p}, z_{s}^{2 p}\right] \ldots \varepsilon U_{p^{\nu}-2}, u \varepsilon\{p, \ldots, 2 p-1\}, \\
\Pi^{\prime} a_{v} \in U_{p^{\nu}+p-3}, v \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, p-1\} .
\end{gathered}
$$

By virtue of the fact that

$$
q^{*}=\prod_{v=1}^{p}\left\{\left[a_{v}, z_{s}^{v}\right]\left[a_{v+p}, z_{s}^{v+p}\right] \ldots\right\}
$$

and (4.2.11), we have

$$
q^{*} \varepsilon c 1\left\{\Pi^{\prime}\left[a_{u}, z_{s}^{p}\right], \Pi^{\prime} a_{v}: p \leq u \leq 2 p-1,1 \leq v \leq p-1\right\} .
$$

Put $\left\{q_{1}^{*}, \ldots, q_{r}^{*}\right\}=\left\{\Pi^{\prime}\left[a_{u}, z_{s}^{p}, \Pi^{\prime} a_{v}: p \leq u \leq 2 p-1,1 \leq v \leq p-1\right\}\right.$ and $v^{*}=p^{\nu}+p-3$ and we are finished.

Proof of (4.2.13). We can, without loss of generality, assume $q$ to be special. Then apply (4.2.14) to $q$, say $q$ involves precisely $y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{s}$, and obtain $q_{1}^{*}, \ldots, q_{r}^{*}$ in which $z_{s}$ occurs either not at all, or to a power which is a multiple of $p$. Then use (4.2.14) on $\mathrm{q}_{1}^{*}, \ldots, \mathrm{q}_{\mathrm{r}}^{*}$, first moving $\mathrm{z}_{\mathrm{s}-1}$ up to the back of each commutator, and making $z_{s-1}$ 'good' according to (4.2.14). Continue this process until we have dealt with $z_{s}, \ldots, z_{1}$ in turn, and hence reached a set of
t-biwords $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{d}$ and a natural number $v$ (the sum of all the relevant $v^{* \prime} s$ ) which satisfy the assertions of the lemma.
(4.2.15) Lemma. Suppose that $\underline{U}$ is a biverbal sub-bigroup of $W_{v}$ determined by t-biwords, and suppose $q \in A-U$. Then $q \notin U_{r}$ for any natural number $r$.

Proof. We may suppose that the $t$-biwords determining $U$ are

$$
q_{i}=\prod_{j=1}^{t}\left[y_{1}, z_{1}^{p \lambda_{i j 1}}, \ldots, z_{s_{i}}^{p \lambda}\right]_{i j s_{i j}}^{\alpha_{i j}}, \quad i \varepsilon I
$$

where $\lambda_{i j k}>0$. Clearly it suffices to show that $\left.\llbracket q, z_{d}\right] \notin U$, where $q$ involves $y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{d-1}$ at most. Suppose to the contrary, that

$$
\mathrm{q}^{\prime}=\left[\mathrm{q}, \mathrm{z}_{\mathrm{d}}\right] \varepsilon \mathrm{U}
$$

Then there are values of the biwords $q_{i}, v_{1}, \ldots, v_{N}$ say, such that
(4.2.16) $\quad q^{\prime}=v_{1} v_{2} \ldots v_{N}$.

Each $v_{j}$ is obtained from some $q_{i}$ by subsituting for $y_{1}$ an element of $A$, and for $z_{1}, \ldots, z_{s_{i}}$, elements of $B$. By applying to (4.2.16) the method of Chapter 3 , section 3 in [3], we may suppose that each $v_{j}$ involves $z_{d}$. These $z_{d}$ 's entered $v_{j}$ by substitution in some $q_{i}$ either for $y_{1}$ or for some $z_{k}$; in the latter case the relevant $z_{d}$ 's will occur raised to a power which is a multiple of $p$.

Consider the self-morphism $\mu$ of $\underset{v}{W}$ defined by

$$
y_{1} \mu=y_{1}, \quad z_{j}{ }^{\mu}=z_{j}, \quad j \neq d, \quad z_{d} \mu=z_{d}^{p-1}
$$

Then, under $\mu$, (4.2.16) becomes
(4.2.17) $\quad\left(q^{\prime} \mu\right)\left(v_{j_{1}}^{-1} \mu\right) \ldots\left(v_{j_{w}}^{-1} \mu\right)=1$,
where $\mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{j}_{k}}$ involves $z_{d}$ only by virtue of the substitution for $y_{1}$ in the relevant $q_{i}$. Indeed, since the commutators involved in the expressions for $q_{i}$ are linear in the first entry, we may suppose, by renaming if necessary, that $v_{j_{k}}$ is obtained from some $q_{i}$ by a substitution for $y_{1}$ of a power of a single commutator of the form

$$
\left[y_{1}, z_{d_{u}}^{\delta_{1}}, \ldots, z_{d_{u}}^{\delta_{u}}, z_{d}^{\delta}\right]
$$

where $d_{1}, \ldots, d_{s}, d$ are distinct, and where $p \frac{1}{1} \delta$, and some unspecified substitution for $z_{1}, \ldots, z_{s_{i}}$ (though it does not involve $z_{d}$ ). That is, there exist values $v_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, v_{R}^{\prime}$ of the $q_{i}$ which do not involve $z_{d}$ at all, such that
(4, 2, 18) $\quad\left(q^{\prime} \mu\right)\left[v_{1}^{\prime}, z_{d}^{\zeta_{1} p^{v-1}}\right] \ldots\left[v_{R}^{\prime}, z_{d}^{\zeta_{R} p^{v-1}}\right]=1$,
with $1 \leq \zeta_{1} \leq \cdots \leq \zeta_{R} \leq p-1$, say.

Lemma 4.2.7, or at any rate the same proof exactly, can now be used to conclude that
(4.2.19) $\quad\left[q_{\zeta} \prod_{i} v_{i}^{\prime}, z_{d}^{p^{v-1}}, \ldots, z_{d+p-2}^{p^{v-1}}\right]=1$.

By a result of Baumslag [10] (24.22 in [3]),

$$
q \prod_{\zeta_{i}=1}^{\pi} v_{i}^{\prime}=1
$$

and in consequence, $q \in U$, contrary to hypothesis. Hence $\left[q, z_{d}\right] \notin \mathrm{U}$.

### 4.3 Proof of (4.2.3)

Write $A_{\nu}$ for the lattice of normal, fully invariant subbigroups of $\underline{W}_{\nu}$. We aim to show that, using the lemmas of the previous section and others to be developed here, that the + -biwords provide an embedding of $\Lambda_{v-1}$ into $\Lambda_{v}$ in a convenient way.

Suppose, therefore, that $\underline{W}_{v-1}$ is free on $\left\{\bar{y}_{1}\right\}_{\cup}\left\{\bar{z}_{1}, \bar{z}_{2}, \ldots\right\}$, that $\bar{A}=A_{1}\left(\underline{W}_{V-1}\right), \quad \bar{B}=A_{2}\left(\underline{W}_{v-1}\right)$ and that the morphism $\xi_{v}: \underline{W}_{v-1} \rightarrow \underline{W}_{v}$ is defined by

$$
\bar{y}_{1} \xi_{v}=y_{1}, \quad \bar{z}_{j} \xi_{v}=z_{j}^{p}, \quad j \varepsilon\{1,2, \ldots\}
$$

The morphism $\xi_{v}$ induces a mapping $\lambda_{v}: \Lambda_{v-1} \rightarrow \Lambda_{v}$ in the following natural way: if $L \in \Lambda_{V-1}$, that is, if $L$ is normal and fully invariant in ${\underset{V}{W}-1}$, then
(4.3.1) $L \lambda \lambda_{v}=c l\left\{\ell \xi_{v}: \ell \varepsilon L\right\}$.

It is clear at once that $\lambda_{v}$ is a join-homomorphism, but not so clear that it is an intersection-homomorphism. In fact we prove
(4.3.2) Lemma. The mapping $\lambda_{v}: \Lambda_{v-1} \rightarrow \Lambda_{v}$ is a one-to-one lattice homomorphism.

Proof. First note that $\lambda_{v}$ preserves inclusion. We are left to show that $\lambda_{v}$ is an intersection-homomorphism and that it is one-to-one. To prove the former it suffices to prove that for $\underline{L}_{1}{ }^{\prime} \underline{L}_{2} \varepsilon \Lambda_{\nu-1}$,
(4.3.3) $\underline{L}_{1} \lambda_{\nu} \cap \underline{L}_{2} \lambda_{\nu} \leq\left(\underline{L}_{1} \cap \underline{L}_{2}\right) \lambda_{\nu}$
since the opposite inclusion is obvious. We need several lemmas to prove what we want.
(4.3.4) Lemma. If $\underline{L} \varepsilon \Lambda_{v-1}$, then $\underline{L \lambda}_{\nu}=\left(\underline{L}_{\nu}\right)^{W_{V}}$.

Proof. Let $\alpha: \underline{W}_{\nu} \rightarrow{\underset{V}{W}}$, then if $\beta: B \rightarrow \bar{B}$ is defined by

$$
z_{j} \beta=\bar{z}_{j}, \quad j \varepsilon\{1,2, \ldots\}
$$

define $\bar{\alpha}: \underline{W}_{V-1} \rightarrow \xrightarrow{W}-1$ by

$$
\bar{y}_{1} \bar{\alpha}=\bar{y}_{1}, \quad \bar{z}_{\mathrm{j}} \bar{\alpha}^{=}=\left(\mathrm{z}_{\mathrm{j}} \alpha\right) \beta .
$$

Also define $\alpha_{1}:{\underset{W}{W}}_{W}^{W} \underline{W}_{V}$ by

$$
y_{1} \alpha_{1}=y_{1} \alpha, \quad z_{j} \alpha_{1}=z_{j}, \quad j \in\{1,2, \ldots\}
$$

Then if $\ell \varepsilon \underline{L}, \quad\left(l \xi_{v}\right) \alpha=(l \bar{\alpha}) \xi_{v} \alpha_{1} \varepsilon\left(\underline{L}_{v}\right) \alpha_{1} \leq\left(\underline{L}_{v}\right)^{W_{V}}$ as required.

This last inclusion is seen from the fact that every normal subgroup of $\underset{v}{W}$ admits $\alpha_{1}$.
(4.3.5) Lemma. If $L \in \mathcal{S}_{\mathcal{V}-1}$, then

$$
\underline{L} \lambda_{v}, A=(\underline{L} \cap \bar{A}) \lambda_{v}, \underline{L} \lambda_{v} \cap B=(\underline{L}, \bar{B}) \xi_{v} .
$$

Proof. For ( $\underline{\underline{L}} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}}) \lambda_{\nu} \leq \underline{\underline{L}} \lambda_{\nu} \wedge \mathrm{A}$ obviously, and if $x \in \underline{L} \lambda_{\nu} \cap A$ then there exist $l_{1}, \ldots, l_{t} \varepsilon L, b_{1}, \ldots, b_{t} \in B$ such that $x=\left(l_{1} \xi_{v}\right)^{b_{1}} \ldots\left(l_{t} \xi_{v}\right)^{b_{t}}$, whence $1=x \sigma_{1}=\left(l_{1} \xi_{v} \sigma_{1}\right)^{b_{1}} \ldots$ $\left(\ell_{t} \xi_{v} \sigma_{1}\right)^{b_{t}}=\left(\ell_{1} \bar{\sigma}_{1} \xi_{v}\right)^{b_{1}} \ldots\left(l_{t} \bar{\sigma}_{t} \xi_{v}\right)^{b_{t}} \quad$ (where $\sigma_{1}, \bar{\sigma}_{1}$ are the splitting endomorphisms (1.2.8)) and so

$$
x=\left(\left(l_{1}\left(l_{1} \bar{\sigma}_{1}\right)^{-1}\right) \xi_{v}\right)^{b_{1}^{\prime}} \ldots\left(\left(l_{t}\left(l_{t} \bar{\sigma}_{1}\right)^{-1}\right) \xi_{v}\right)^{b_{t}^{\prime}}
$$

for some $b_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, b_{t}^{\prime} \in B$. Hence $x \in(\underline{L} \cap \bar{A}) \lambda_{\nu}$. That $\underline{L} \lambda_{\nu} \cap B=$.
$(\underline{L} \cap \bar{B}) \xi_{\nu}$ is proved similarly.

From this lemma, and from the definition of $\xi_{v}$, we have that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(\underline{L}_{1} \lambda_{v}\right. & \left.\cap \underline{L}_{2} \lambda_{v}\right) \cap B=\left(\underline{L}_{1} \lambda_{v} \cap B\right) \cap\left(\underline{L}_{v} \cap B\right) \\
& =\left(\underline{L}_{1} \cap \bar{B}\right) \xi_{v} \cap\left(\underline{L}_{2} \cap \bar{B}\right) \xi_{v}=\left(\underline{L}_{1} \cap \underline{L}_{2} \cap \bar{B}\right) \xi_{v} \\
& =\left(\underline{L}_{1} \cap \underline{L}_{2}\right) \lambda_{v} \cap B .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence in order to prove (4.3.3) it suffices to show that $\underline{L}_{1} \lambda_{V} \cap \underline{L}_{2} \lambda_{V} \cap A \leq\left(\underline{L}_{1} \cap \underline{I}_{2}\right) \lambda_{V} \cap A$, or that
(4.3.6) $\left(\underline{\underline{L}}_{1} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}}\right) \lambda_{v} \cap\left(\underline{L}_{2} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}}\right) \lambda_{v} \leq\left(\underline{L}_{1} \cap \underline{\underline{L}}_{2} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}}\right) \lambda_{v}$.

If $q$ belongs to the left hand side of (4.3.6) then, by virtue of (4.2.13) there exist $\dagger$-biwords $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{d}$, and an integer $v$ such that

$$
\left[q_{i}, v B\right] \leq\left(\underline{L}_{1} \cap \bar{A}\right) \lambda_{v} \cap\left(\underline{L}_{2} \cap \bar{A}\right) \lambda_{v}, \quad i \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, d\} .
$$

However $\left(\underline{L}_{i} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}}\right) \lambda_{\nu},\left(\underline{\underline{L}}_{2} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}}\right) \lambda_{\nu}$ are determined by +-b words and therefore Lemma 4.2.15 ensures that for each $i$, $q_{i} \varepsilon\left(\underline{L}_{1} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}}\right) \lambda_{\nu} \cap\left(\underline{L}_{2} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}}\right) \lambda_{\nu}$. The other piece of information from (4.2.13) is that $q \varepsilon \operatorname{cl}\left\{q_{1}, \ldots q_{d}\right\}$; hence $\left(\underline{L}_{1} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}}\right) \lambda_{V} \cap\left(\underline{L}_{2} \sim \overline{\mathrm{~A}}\right) \lambda_{V}$ is determined by + -biwords.

In order to finish off the proof of (4.3.3) we need the following lemma. The proof given is due to L.G. Kovács, and replaces my original, much longer, proof.
(4.3.7) Lemma. If $\underline{L} \in \Lambda_{V-1}, \underline{L} \leq \bar{A}$, and if $q \in \underline{L} \lambda_{V}$ is a *biword, then $q \varepsilon \underline{L} \xi_{v}$.

Proof. By $(4.3 .4), q \varepsilon\left(\underline{L} \xi_{v}\right)^{W} \nu$ and hence there exist $l_{1} \in L$ and $b_{i} \in B$ such that

$$
q=\prod_{i=1}^{t}\left(l_{i} \xi_{v}\right)^{b_{i}} .
$$

Write $T$ for a fixed transversal of $B^{P}$ in $B$, with $1 \varepsilon T$. Then $b_{i}=b_{i}^{\prime} b_{i}^{\prime \prime}, b_{i}^{\prime} \varepsilon B^{p}, b_{i}^{\prime \prime} \varepsilon T$ and,

$$
\begin{aligned}
q & =\prod_{b \varepsilon T}\left(\prod_{b_{i}^{\prime \prime}=b}\left(l_{i} \xi_{v}\right)^{b_{i}^{\prime}}\right)^{b} \\
& =\prod_{b \varepsilon T}\left(\prod_{b_{i}^{\prime \prime}=b}\left(l_{i}^{b_{i}^{\prime} \xi_{v}^{-1}}\right) \xi_{v}\right)^{b} \\
& =\prod_{b \varepsilon T}\left(l_{b} \xi_{v}\right)^{b} \text { where } l_{b} \varepsilon L .
\end{aligned}
$$

Note that $q, \quad l_{b} a l l$ belong to $W_{v-1} \xi_{v} \cap A$ and therefore each has its support contained in $B^{p}$. However $\operatorname{supp}\left(\ell_{b} \xi_{v}\right)^{b}$ is contained in $B^{P_{b}}{ }^{-1}$, and since these coset are pairwise disjoint,

$$
\operatorname{supp} q=\bigcup_{b \varepsilon T} \operatorname{supp}\left(l_{b} \xi_{v}\right)^{b} \subseteq B^{p}
$$

whence $1 \neq b \in T$ implies supp $\ell_{b} \xi_{V}=\phi$, or $\ell_{b}=1$; thus $q=\ell_{1} \xi_{v} \in L \xi_{v}$.

To complete the proof of (4.3.3) observe that $\left(\underline{L}_{1}, \bar{A}\right) \lambda_{\nu} \cap$ $\left(\underline{L}_{2}, \bar{A}\right) \lambda_{v}$ is determined by t-biwords, one of which is $q^{\dagger}$, say. Since $\mathrm{q}^{\dagger} \varepsilon\left(\underline{L}_{1} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}}\right) \lambda_{v} \cap\left(\underline{L}_{2} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}}\right) \lambda_{\nu}$, Lemma 4.3.7 shows that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{q}^{\dagger} \varepsilon\left(\underline{L}_{1} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}}\right) \xi_{v} \cap\left(\underline{L}_{2} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}}\right) \xi_{v}=\left(\underline{L}_{1} \cap \underline{L}_{2} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}}\right) \xi_{v} \\
& \left.\leq \leq \underline{\underline{L}}_{1} \cap \underline{L}_{2} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}}\right) \lambda_{v} .
\end{aligned}
$$

This completes the proof of (4.3.3).

To finish off the proof of (4.3.2) we need to show that $\lambda_{V}$ is one-to-one. If $\underline{L}_{1} \lambda_{\nu}=\underline{L}_{2} \lambda_{\nu}$ then $\underline{L}_{1} \lambda_{\nu} \cap B=\underline{L}_{2} \lambda_{V} \cap B$ so that, from (4.3.5) $\left(\underline{L}_{1} \cap \bar{B}\right) \xi_{v}=\left(\underline{L}_{2} \cap \bar{B}\right) \xi_{v}$ whence $\underline{L}_{1} \cap \bar{B}=\underline{L}_{2} \cap \bar{B}$. Also $\underline{L}_{1} \lambda_{V} \cap A=\underline{L}_{2} \lambda_{V} \cap A$ and therefore, by (4.3.5) $\left(\underline{L}_{1} \cap \bar{A}\right) \lambda_{V}=$ $\left(\underline{L}_{2} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}}\right) \lambda_{\nu}$. Now $\left(\underline{L}_{2} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}}\right) \lambda_{v}$ is determined by t-biwords $l \xi_{v}$, $\ell \varepsilon \underline{L}_{2} \cap \bar{A}$, and Lemma 4.3.7 then gives $\ell \xi_{\nu} \varepsilon\left(\underline{L}_{1} \cap \bar{A}\right) \xi_{\nu}$, or $\ell \in \underline{L}_{1} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}}$. That is, $\underline{L}_{2} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}} \leq \underline{L}_{1} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}}$. In a similar way we prove $\underline{L}_{1} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}} \leq \underline{L}_{2} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}}$ and therefore $\underline{L}_{1} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}}=\underline{L}_{2} \cap \overline{\mathrm{~A}}$, and so $\underline{L}_{1}=\underline{L}_{2}$. This completes the proof of (4.3.2).

We now derive some properties of the embedding $\lambda_{v}$ which are essentially extensions of Lemma 4.2.13, using the Inductive Hypothesis 4.1.4.
(4.3.8) Lemma. To every $\underline{U} \varepsilon \Lambda_{V}$, with $\underline{U} \leq A$ there corresponds a unique $\underline{L} \varepsilon \Lambda_{V \rightarrow 1}$, with $L \leq \bar{A}$, and an integer $v=v(\underline{U})$ such that

$$
[\underline{L} \lambda, v, v B] \leq \underline{U} \leq \underline{L}_{v} .
$$

Proof. To each $q \in U$ associate the t-biwords $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{d}$ of (4.2.13) and also the integers, $v_{q}$ say, involved there. If ${\underset{q}{q}}^{\text {s }}$ is the normalized verbal closure of $\left\{q_{1}, \ldots, q_{d}\right\}$ then

$$
\left[\underline{S}_{q}, v_{q} B\right] \leq \operatorname{cl}\{q\} \leq \underline{S}_{q} .
$$

As the $q_{i}$ t-biwords, there exists ${\underset{q}{q}}^{\varepsilon} \Lambda_{v-1}$ with ${\underset{q}{q}}^{\lambda_{v}}={\underset{q}{S}}$. Write

$$
\underline{L}=\Pi\left\{\underline{L}_{q}: q \in \underline{U}\right\}
$$

Since we have the inductive hypothesis, $\Lambda_{v-1}$ has ascending chain condition, and therefore $\underline{L}$ is the join of a finite number of the $\underline{L}_{\mathrm{q}}$ 's, say those corresponding to $q^{(1)}, \ldots, q^{(T)} \varepsilon \underline{U}$. Put

$$
v=\max \left\{v_{q}(i): 1 \leq i \leq T\right\}
$$

Then $\underline{U} \leq \pi\left\{\underline{S}_{q}: q \in \underline{U}\right\}=\pi\left\{\underline{L}_{q} \lambda_{\nu}: q \varepsilon \underline{U}\right\}=\pi\left\{\underline{L}_{q}(i) \lambda_{\nu}: 1 \leq i \leq T\right\}$ $=\underline{L} \lambda v ;$ and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& {\left[\underline{L}_{v}, v B\right]=\left[\Pi\left\{\underline{L}_{q}(i)_{v}: 1 \leq i \leq T\right\}, v B\right]} \\
& =\prod_{i=1}^{T}\left[\underline{L}_{q}(i) \lambda_{v}, v B\right] \\
& \leq \prod_{i=1}^{T}\left[\underline{L}_{q}(i) \lambda_{v}, v{ }_{q}(i) B\right] \\
& \leq \underline{U}^{B}
\end{aligned}
$$

which finishes the proof of the theorem except for the uniqueness of L : if there exists $\underline{L}^{\prime}, v^{\prime}$ with the asserted properties, then

$$
\left[\underline{L}^{\prime} \lambda_{\nu}, v^{\prime} B\right] \leq \underline{L}_{\nu} \text { and }\left[\underline{L} \lambda_{v}, v B\right] \leq \underline{L}^{\prime} \lambda_{v},
$$

and Lemma 4.2.15 shows that $\underline{L}^{\prime} \lambda_{\nu} \leq \underline{L}_{\nu} \leq \underline{L}^{\prime} \lambda_{\nu}$, or $\underline{L}_{\nu}=\underline{L}^{\prime} \lambda_{\nu}$ whence $\underline{L}=\underline{L}^{\prime}$ from (4.3.2).

The last lemma necessary to prove Theorem 4.2.3 is the following.
(4.3.9) Lemma. Let $\underline{L} \in \Lambda_{\nu-1}, \underline{L} \leq \bar{A}$, and let $v$ be a natural number. There exists a natural number $s=s(\underline{L}, v)$ such that if $q \varepsilon \underline{L} \lambda_{\nu}$ is special and involves more than $s$ elements of the free generating set $\left\{z_{1}, z_{2}, \ldots\right\}$ then $q \varepsilon[\underline{L} \lambda, v, v B]$.

Proof. The proof will be by induction on $v$. If $v=1$ then $q \varepsilon \underline{L}_{\nu}{ }_{\nu}$ can be written

$$
q=\prod_{i=1}^{t}\left[y_{1}, z_{1}^{\delta}{ }_{i 1}, \ldots, z_{u}^{\delta_{i u^{\prime}}}{ }^{\alpha_{i}}\right.
$$

where $1 \leq \delta_{i j} \leq p-1$ for all $i, j$, and $\left(\delta_{i 1}, \ldots, \delta_{i u}\right)$ are distinct for distinct 1 . Employ (4.2.7) $u$ times to deduce that

$$
\mathrm{y}_{1}^{\alpha_{i}} \varepsilon\left(\underline{L} \lambda_{\nu}\right)_{\delta}, \quad i \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, t\}
$$

where $\delta=\sum_{j=1}^{u} \max _{i} \delta_{i j}$. Lemma 4.2.15 then yields $y_{1}^{\alpha_{i}} \varepsilon \underline{L} \lambda \nu$ whence
$q \varepsilon\left[\underline{L} \lambda_{\nu}, u B\right]$. Hence $s=v$ will do, and the proof of the first step is complete.

Assume, therefore, that $v \geq 2$ and that the lemma is proved for $v-1$. Associate with $q$ the special t-biwords $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{d}$ of (4.2.13). By (4.2.13) and (4.2.15), $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{d} \varepsilon \underline{L}_{\nu}{ }_{v}$. Suppose that $q_{i}$ involves $s_{i}$ variables $z_{j}, i \in\{1, \ldots, d\}$. Let $\underline{\underline{L}} \varepsilon \Lambda_{v-2}$ and $\underline{L} \leq \bar{L} \lambda \nu-1$ according to (4.3.8), and define

$$
s(\underline{L}, v)=s(\underline{\bar{L}}, v(\underline{L})+v)+v
$$

where $\mathrm{v}(\underline{\mathrm{L}})$ is defined as in (4.3.8), assuming inductively that s can be defined for $v-1$.

Now by (4.2.13) and (4.3.4), $q$ is in the normal closure of $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{d}$. Hence we may write

$$
q=\prod_{j=1}^{t}\left[q_{i_{j}}, z_{k_{j 1}}^{\alpha_{j 1}} \ldots, z_{k_{j r_{j}}}^{\alpha_{j r_{j}} \beta_{j}}\right.
$$

where $1 \leq \alpha_{j \ell} \leq p^{\nu}-1$, all $j, \ell$. We may assume, by using the argument leading to Theorem 33.45 in [3], that if $q$ involves precisely the variables $y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{u}$ (where $u \geq s(\underline{L}, v)$ ) then for each $j$, the set of variables $z_{w}$ involved in $q_{i_{j}}$ together with $z_{k_{j 1}}, \ldots, z_{k_{j r_{j}}}$ is just $\left\{z_{1}, \ldots, z_{u}\right\}$. (This can also be concluded from
a close look at the proof of (4.2.13)). If for some $j \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, t\}$, $s_{i_{j}} \leq s(\underline{L}, v)-v$ then $\left|\left\{k_{j 1}, \ldots, k_{j r_{j}}\right\}\right| \geq v$ and therefore the commutator beginning with $q_{i_{j}}$ belongs to $\left[\underline{L} \lambda_{\nu}, v B\right]$. If on the other hand $s_{i_{j}}>s(\underline{L}, v)-v$ for some $j \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, t\}$, then $s_{i_{j}}>s(\underline{\bar{L}}, v(\underline{L})+v)$ hence

$$
\begin{aligned}
q_{i_{j}} \xi_{v}^{-1} \varepsilon & {\left[\overline{\underline{L}} \lambda_{v-1},(v(\underline{L})+v) \bar{B}\right] } \\
& =\left[\left[\overline{\mathrm{L}} \lambda_{v-1}, v(\underline{L}) \overline{\mathrm{B}}\right], v \overline{\mathrm{~B}}\right] \\
& \leq[\underline{L}, v \overline{\mathrm{~B}}]
\end{aligned}
$$

so that $q_{i_{j}} \varepsilon[\underline{L}, v \bar{B}] \lambda_{\nu} \leq\left[\underline{L}_{v}, v B\right]$. Clearly, then, the commutator beginning with this $q_{i_{j}}$ belongs to $[\underline{L} \lambda, v, v B]$. Therefore $q \varepsilon[\underline{L} \lambda, v, v B]$.

Proof of (4.2.3). Suppose that $\underline{U}_{1} \leq \underline{U}_{2} \leq \cdots \leq \underline{U}_{i} \leq \cdots$ is an ascending chain in $\Lambda_{\nu}$. Clearly the chain

$$
\underline{U}_{1} \cap B \leq \underline{U}_{2} \cap B \leq \cdots \leq \underline{U}_{i} \cap^{B} \leq \cdots
$$

terminates in a finite number of steps; hence it suffices to consider the chain of the $\underline{U}_{i} \cap$ A, or, without loss of generality, to assume $\underline{U}_{i} \leq A, \quad i \varepsilon\{1,2, \ldots\}$. In this case (4.3.8) ensures that there exists to each $i \in\{1,2, \ldots\}$ a unique $\underline{L}_{i} \in \Lambda_{\nu-1}$ and an integer $v_{i}$ such that

$$
\left[\underline{L}_{i} \lambda_{\nu}, v_{i}^{B]} \leq \underline{U}_{i} \leq \underline{L}_{i} \lambda_{\nu} .\right.
$$

Now $i \leq j$ implies $\underline{L}_{i} \leq \underline{L}_{j}$; for

$$
\left[\underline{L}_{i} \lambda_{v}, v_{i}^{B}\right] \leq \underline{U}_{i} \leq \underline{U}_{j} \leq \underline{L}_{j} \lambda_{v}
$$

and (4.2.15) and (4.3.7) give $\underline{L}_{i} \leq \underline{L}_{j}$. Under the inductive hypothesis (4.1.4) it follows that there exists an integer m such that for $m \leq i, L_{m}=\underline{L}_{i}$. Hence for $m \leq 1$

$$
\left[L_{m} \lambda_{v}, v_{m} B\right] \leq \underline{U}_{i} \leq \underline{L}_{m}^{\lambda} v .
$$

By virtue of (4.3.9) there exists an integer $s_{0}=s\left(\underline{L}_{m}, v_{m}\right)$ such that if $q \in \underline{U}_{i}$ is special and involves more than ${ }_{s}{ }_{0}$ variables $z_{j}$, then $q \in\left[\underline{L}_{m}^{\lambda} \nu, v_{m} B\right]$. It follows that $\underline{U}_{i}$ can be determined, modulo [ $\underline{L}_{\mathrm{m}} \lambda_{v}, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{B}$ ], by bilaws involving at most $\mathrm{y}_{1}, \mathrm{z}_{1}, \ldots, \mathrm{z}_{\mathrm{s}_{0}}$. By the inductive hypothesis (4.1.4), Theorems 2.1.1 and 1.5.4,
$L_{m}{ }^{\lambda} \nu$ is finitely based, and therefore so is $\left[\underline{L}_{m} \lambda_{\nu}, v_{m} B\right]$; we may suppose the latter to have a basis involving $t_{0}$ variables $z_{j}$. Hence $\underline{U}_{i}$, $m \leq i$, is defined by laws involving at most $s_{0}+t_{0}$ variables $z_{j}$. It follows that the biverbal sub-bigroup lattice between [ $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{m}} \lambda, v_{\mathrm{m}}{ }^{\mathrm{B}}$ ] and $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{m}} \lambda \nu$ is isomorphic to the corresponding one in the free bigroup of rank $\left(1, s_{0}+t_{0}\right)$ of $\xlongequal[\equiv]{A} \stackrel{A}{A_{p}} \nu^{\circ}$. This is however, a finitely generated metabelian group, and, by a well-known result of P. Hall [20], has ascending chain condition on normal subgroups. This completes the proof of (4.2.3) and therefore of (4.0.1).

### 4.4 Descending chain condition for $A$

The first lemma proved here is similar to (4.1.3); indeed a similar proof will do. However we give a different one here.
(4.4.1) Lemma. If $m, t$ are coprime, then the bigroup $C_{m} w r C_{t}$ generates $A_{m} \circ{\underset{\underline{A}}{t}}$. The bigroup $C_{m}$ mr $C$ generates $A_{m} \circ$ A. (Here $C_{m}, C_{t}$ are cycles of order $m, t$, and $C$ is an infinite cycle).

Proof. Let $\underline{G}$ be critical in ${\underset{A}{m}}^{\circ} \underline{\underline{A}}_{t}$; then if either $A_{1}(\underline{G})$ or $A_{2}(\underline{G})=1, \underline{G} \varepsilon \operatorname{svar}\left\{C_{m}\right.$ wr $\left.C_{t}\right\}$. If $A_{1}(\underline{G}), A_{2}(\underline{G}) \neq 1$ then by (3.2.1), $A_{2}(\underline{G})$ is cyclic, and $A_{1}(\underline{G})$ is generated qua $A_{2}(\underline{G})-$ group by a single element; hence since $C_{m} w r C_{t}$ is the split-free bigroup of rank (1,1) in ${\underset{\mathrm{A}}{\mathrm{m}}}^{\circ}{\underline{{\underset{A}{t}}^{t}}}$, $\underline{G}$ is an epimorphic image of $C_{m}$ mr $C_{t}$. That is, $A_{m} \circ{\underset{E t}{A}}^{A_{t}}$ is generated by $C_{m} w r C_{t}$.

To prove the rest, suppose that $\left\{t_{1}, t_{2}, \ldots\right\}$ is an infinite set of natural numbers all prime to $m$, with $t_{i} \mid t_{i+1}$ for all $i \varepsilon\{1,2, \ldots\}$. We show that $A_{m}^{A} \circ \stackrel{A}{\underline{A}}=V\left\{A_{\mathrm{m}} \circ \stackrel{A}{=}_{\mathrm{A}_{i}}: i=1,2, \ldots\right\}$; clearly this implies that $C_{m}$ mr $C$ generates ${\underset{m}{m}}_{A}^{\underline{A}}$. Consider the descending chain

$$
\left.A_{2}(\underline{W})^{t} 1_{\left[A_{1}(\underline{W}), A_{2}(\underline{W})\right.}{ }^{t}\right] \geq A_{2}(\underline{W})^{t}{ }^{t}\left[A_{1}(\underline{W}), A_{2}(\underline{W})^{t}\right] \geq \ldots
$$

of biverbal sub-bigroups of $\underline{W}=F(\omega, \omega)\left(A_{m} \circ \underset{=}{A}\right)$; these biverbal sub-bigroups are those corresponding to the bivarieties ${\underset{=}{A}}^{\circ} \stackrel{A}{=}_{t_{i}}$.

Now the chain

$$
A_{2} \text { (W) }^{t_{1}} \geq A_{2}(\underline{W})^{t_{2}} \geq \cdots
$$

has trivial intersection, and if we can show the same for the chain

$$
\left[A_{1}(\underline{W}), A_{2} \underline{W}^{t}{ }^{t}\right] \geq\left[A_{1}(\underline{W}), A_{2}(\underline{W})^{t} 2\right] \geq \ldots
$$

then we shall have proved what we want. To this end, let $T_{i}$ be a fixed set of coset representatives for $A_{2}(\underline{W})^{t} i$ in $A_{2}(\underline{W})$, such that $T_{1} \subseteq T_{2} \leq \ldots$. Now if $a \varepsilon\left[A_{1}(W), A_{2}(\underline{W})^{{ }^{i}}\right]$ then, by an argument similar to that in (4.3.7), we may write

$$
\operatorname{supp} a=u\left\{\Gamma_{b}^{(i)}: b \in T_{i}\right\}
$$

where $\Gamma_{b}^{(i)} \subseteq A_{2}(W){ }^{t} i_{b}-1$. If $a \in\left[A_{1}(\underline{W}), A_{2}(W){ }^{t}\right]$ for all $i$, then clearly, since supp a is finite, each $\Gamma_{b}^{(i)}=\phi$ and therefore $a=1$. This completes the proof of (4.4.1).

The next lemma is a trivial adaptation of an unpublished result of L. G. Kovács about varieties of metabelian groups.

$$
\text { (4.4.2) Lemma. If } \underset{\sim}{U} \text { is a proper sub-bivariety of } \underset{=m}{A} \circ \underset{=}{A}
$$ then all bigroups in $\underset{\sim}{U}$ satisfy the bilaw

$$
\left[y_{1}, r z_{1}^{s}\right]^{t}
$$

for some integers $r, s, t$ with $m f t$.

Proof. Consider the split-free bigroup of rank $(\omega, \omega)$ in $A$

$$
\text { (4.4.3) } \prod_{i=0}^{v} y_{1}^{\alpha_{i} z_{1}^{i}} \varepsilon U
$$

for some integers $\alpha_{0}, \ldots, \alpha_{v}$ with $m \not{ }^{+} \alpha_{0} ;$ for, if there is no such relation holding, then the factor bigroup $\underline{W} \underline{U}$ has a sub-bigroup $\left\langle y_{1} \underline{U}, z_{1} \underline{U}\right\rangle$ isomorphic to $C_{m}$ wr $C$ which generates $A_{m} 0 \underset{\equiv}{A}$, by (4.4.1).

From (4.4.3) we deduce that

$$
\prod_{i=0}^{v} y_{1}^{\alpha_{i} z_{1}^{i j}}, j \in\{0, \ldots, v\}
$$

are bilaws in $\underline{W} / \underline{U}$ and therefore in $\underset{\sim}{U}$. Working in the endomorphism ring of $A_{1}(\underline{W} / \underline{U})$ we have

$$
\sum_{i=0}^{v} \alpha_{i} z_{1}^{i j}=0, j \varepsilon\{0, \ldots, v\}
$$

This implies $\alpha_{0} \Pi_{j<i}\left(z_{1}^{i}-z_{1}^{j}\right)=0$ and so $\alpha_{0} \Pi_{j<i}\left(z^{i-j}-1\right)=0$.
Hence

$$
\alpha_{0} \prod_{k=1}^{v}\left(z_{1}^{k}-1\right)^{v-k+1}=0
$$

whence

$$
\alpha_{0}\left(z_{1}^{v!}-1\right)^{\frac{1}{2} v(v+1)}=0
$$

Put $r=\frac{1}{2} v(v+1), s=v!, t=\alpha_{0}$ and we have

$$
\left[y_{1}, r z_{1}^{s}\right]^{t} \varepsilon \underline{U}
$$

(4.4.4) Lemma. Every proper sub-bivariety of ${\underset{\underline{A}}{\mathrm{~A}}}^{\circ}$ A, where $p$ is prime, is contained in some $E \circ A_{V} A_{p} \circ A_{n}$.

Proof. If $\underset{\sim}{U} \subset \underset{A_{p}}{A} \circ \underset{\underline{\underline{A}}}{ }$ then every bigroup in $\underset{\sim}{U}$ has a bilaw $\left[y_{1}, r z_{1}^{s}\right.$ ], since $p+t$. Let $v$ be a natural number chosen so that $\mathrm{p}^{\nu} \geq \mathrm{r}$. Then every bigroup in $\underset{\sim}{\mathrm{U}}$ has a bilaw $\left[\mathrm{y}_{1}, \mathrm{sp}_{1}^{\nu}\right]$, since

$$
\left.\left[y_{1}, z_{1}^{s p}{ }^{\nu}\right]={\underset{\mu}{p=1}}_{\nu}^{\nu}\left[y_{1}, z_{1}^{s}\right]^{p^{\nu}}\right)^{\nu}
$$

modulo the bilaws of $A_{p} \circ \stackrel{A}{\underline{A}}$, and $\mu<r \leq p^{\nu}$ implies $p \left\lvert\,\left[\begin{array}{l}p^{\nu} \\ \mu\end{array}\right]\right.$.
In particular the non-abelian critical bigroups $\underline{G}$ of $\mathbb{U}$ satisfy $\left[y_{1}, z_{1}^{s p}{ }^{\nu}\right.$ ]. Since $A_{1}(G)$ is self-centralizing and not 1 it follows
 concludes the proof.
(4.4.5) Theorem. ${ }_{\underline{A}}{ }^{\mu}{ }^{\circ}$ A has descending chain condition on sub-bivarieties.

Proof. The proof is by induction on $\mu$, the previous lemma providing a starting point. We show that all descending chains of bivarieties between $\underset{p^{A}}{A} \circ \stackrel{A}{\equiv}$ and $\underset{p^{A}}{ } \mu-1 \circ \stackrel{\text { A }}{\underline{E}}$ break off; hence if we assume that $\underset{p^{\mathrm{A}}}{\mu-1}{ }^{\circ} \xlongequal{\text { A }}$ has descending chain condition on sub-bivarieties, Theorem 2.1.3 gives that ${\underset{\mathrm{p}}{ }{ }^{\mu}}^{\circ} \stackrel{\mathrm{A}}{ }$ does also.

Work in the split-free bigroup of rank $(\omega, \omega)$ in ${\underset{\mathrm{E}}{ }{ }^{\mu}}^{\circ}$ 을, call it $\underline{W}$ say, with $A=A_{1}(\underline{W}), B=A_{2}(\underline{W})$. The mapping $\alpha: W / A^{P} \rightarrow\left\langle A^{p^{\mu-1}}, B\right\rangle$ defined by

$$
\left(\mathrm{baA}^{\mathrm{p}}\right) \alpha=b a^{\mathrm{p}^{\mu-1}}
$$

is easily checked to be an isomorphism; hence $\left\langle A^{\mathrm{P}^{\mu-1}}, B\right\rangle$ is isomorphic to $\underset{(\omega, \omega)}{ }\left(A_{p} \circ \stackrel{A}{\underline{p}}\right)$. Now if $B$ is a self-morphism of $\left\langle A^{p^{\mu-1}}, B\right\rangle$ then $y_{i}^{p^{\mu-1}} \beta=a_{i}^{p^{\mu-1}}, a_{i} \varepsilon A$. Define $\beta^{*}: \underline{W} \rightarrow \underline{W}$ by

$$
y_{i} \beta^{*}=a_{i}, \quad z_{j} \beta^{*}=z_{j} \beta^{B} \quad i, j \in\{1,2, \ldots\} .
$$

Clearly $\beta * \mid\left\langle A^{\mathrm{p}^{\mu-1}}, \mathrm{~B}\right\rangle=\beta$ and therefore a fully invariant sub-bigroup of $\underline{W}$ contained in $\left\langle A^{\mathrm{P}^{\mu-1}}, B\right\rangle$ is fully invariant in $\left\langle\mathrm{A}^{\mathrm{p}^{\mu-1}}, B\right\rangle$. Therefore all ascending chains of normal, fully invariant sub-bigroups of $\underline{W}$ contained in $\left\langle A^{p^{\mu-1}}, B\right\rangle$ break off; in other words, all descending chains of bivarieties between $\underset{p^{A}}{A} \circ \stackrel{A}{\underline{A}}$ and ${\underset{p}{A}}_{\mu-1} \circ \underline{\underline{A}}$ break off. This completes the proof of (4.4.5).

It remains to remark that for relatively prime integers $u, v$ :
by (1.7.4), and then (2.1.2) and (4.4.5) give Theorem 4.0.2.

To prove (4.0.3) the only unproved thing is that $A_{m} 0 \underset{=}{A} \stackrel{A}{=} 0 A_{n}^{A}$ is finitely based. This is shown by the following lemma, due to L.G. Kovács.
(4.4.6) Lemma. For natural numbers $m, n, A A_{-m}^{A} \vee A A_{\underline{A}}^{A}$ has a finite basis for its bilaws.
 $\left[y_{1}^{m}, z_{1}^{n}\right]$, together with the bilaws of $\stackrel{A}{=} \circ$. We have to show that if $\underline{W}$ is the split-free bigroup of rank $(\omega, \omega)$ in $\underset{=}{A} 0$, then

$$
A_{1}\left(\underline{W}^{m} \cap\left(A_{2}(\underline{W})^{n}\right)^{W}=\left[A_{1}(\underline{W})^{m}, A_{2}(\underline{W})^{n}\right]\right.
$$

Now if $\gamma$ is the natural morphism from $W$ to the split-free bigroup of rank $(\omega, \omega)$ of $A \circ A_{n}$, then

$$
\text { er } \gamma \cap A_{1}(\underline{W})=\left[A_{1}(\underline{W}), A_{2} \underline{(W)}^{n}\right]
$$

Since $A_{1}(\underline{W}) /\left[A_{1}(\underline{W}), A_{2} \underline{W}^{n}\right]$ is therefore a free abelian group, $\left[A_{1} \underline{(W)}, A_{2}(\underline{W})^{n}\right]$ is complemented in $A_{1}(\underline{W})$. Hence

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A_{1}(\underline{W})^{m} \cap\left(A_{2}(\underline{W})^{n}\right)^{W}=A_{1}(\underline{W})^{m} \cap\left[A_{1}(\underline{W}), A_{2}(\underline{W})^{n}\right] \\
& \quad=\left[A_{1}(\underline{W}), A_{2}(\underline{W})^{n}\right]^{m}=\left[A_{1}(\underline{W})^{m}, A_{2}(W)^{n}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

This completes the proof of (4.4.6) and therefore that of (4.0.3).

## CHAPTER 5

## FURTHER RESULTS AND APPLICATIONS

In this chapter we shall attempt to pin down the structure of the lattice of sub-bivarieties of $A$ We shall show that essentially every thing can be describ ed in terms of prime-power exponent sub-bivarieties, and for these we get a complete classification only for the sub-bivarieties of ${\underset{p}{A} \alpha}_{A}^{=} A_{p}$. Thus when $m, n$ are nearly coprime, a complicated, yet complete description of $\Lambda\left(A_{m} \circ{\underset{A}{n}}_{A_{n}}\right)$ can be given. In section 5.5 the question of classifying the subvarieties of $A_{m} A_{n}$ is taken up, and we show how a complete classification can be given in the case $m, n$ nearly coprime, and that this type of classification cannot be extended to general m,n.

A question that has come into vogue recently is that of distributivity of the lattice of varieties of groups. It is known, for example, that the lattice of varieties of A-groups is distributive (Cossey [4]), that the lattice of nilpotent varieties of class at most 3 is distributive (Jonsson [11]), and that certain metabelian varieties form distributive lattices (Brisley [7], Weichsel [12], Newman [14, 15].). On the other hand Higman [23] constructed a non-distributive lattice of varieties of exponent $p(\geq 7)$ and class at most 6 . The formulation of some of the results in this chapter is done with the question of
distributivity in mind. Among the results proved in this direction is the following: if $\underline{\underline{V}}$ is a variety of metabelian groups of bounded exponent, such that Sylow p-subgroups of groups in $\underset{\underline{V}}{ }$ have class at most $c \leq p$, then $\Lambda(\underline{\underline{V}})$ is distributive provided $\Lambda\left(\underline{\underline{V}} \wedge_{\underline{N}}^{N}\right)$ is distributive; and if Sylow p-subgroups of groups in $\underset{=}{V}$ have class greater than $p$, then $\Lambda(V)$ may not be distributive. The results of Brisley, Weichsel and Jonsson mentioned above can then be employed to get positive results about distributivity.

### 5.1 Further results on critical bigroups in A A A

We saw in Chapter 3 something of the structure of non-nilpotent critical bigroups in A 0 A; in particular we saw that each such bigroup G $h$ as a sub-bigroup $\mathrm{F}^{*}$, which has p -power exponent and does not belong to the variety of its proper sub-bigroups. Unfortunately $\mathrm{F}^{*}$ may be non-monolithic and therefore non-critical: one example of such a situation occurs with $F^{*}$ equal to the central factor group of $C_{2}$ mr $\left(C_{4} \times C_{2}\right)$. It is easy to prove a general result which implies that if $F^{*}$ is monolithic, then it is critical (cf. (1.2) in [5] of Kovács and Newman):
(5.1.1) Theorem. If $G \in \underset{\equiv}{A} \circ$ is monolithic and not in the bivariety generated by its proper sub-bigroups, then $G$ is critical.

$$
\text { Proof. Let } G=(G, A, B) \text {. It follows as in (3.1.6) }
$$

that there exists a unique maximal normal subgroup of $G$ contained in $A$, and hence that $N=A^{p}[A, H]$ where $A$ is a $p$-group and $H$ is the Sylow p-subgroup of B. Also it is easy to see that the maximal sub-bigroups of $G$ are $A B_{0}$, $N B$ where $B_{o}$ is maximal in $B$. We show that $\underline{G} / \sigma \underline{G} \varepsilon$ svar\{NB\}. If $q$ is a bilaw in $N B$ we may assume it to be special, involving $y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{t-1}(t \geq 1)$. If $\alpha: \underline{Q}_{2} \rightarrow \underline{G}$, define $\beta: \underline{Q}_{2} \rightarrow N B$ by

$$
y_{1} \beta=\left(y_{1} \alpha\right)^{p}, \quad z_{i} \beta=z_{i} \alpha, \quad \text { i } \varepsilon\{1,2, \ldots\},
$$

and $\gamma: \underline{Q}_{2} \rightarrow N B$ by

$$
y_{1} \gamma=\left[y_{1}, z_{t}^{r}\right], \quad z_{i} \gamma=z_{i}, \quad \text { i } \varepsilon\{1,2, \ldots\}
$$

where $r=\exp B / H$. It is easily seen that $(q \alpha)^{p}=q \beta=1$, $\left[q, \mathrm{z}_{\mathrm{t}}^{\mathrm{r}}\right] \alpha=\mathrm{qr}=1$. Thus $\mathrm{q}(\underline{G})$ lies in the socle of AH , that is, in $\sigma \underline{G}$. Hence $q$ is a law in G/oG. Since all proper quotient bigroups of $\underline{G}$ are quotient bigroups of $\underline{G} / \sigma \underline{G}$ it follows from the hypotheses that $\underline{G}$ is critical.
(5.1.2) Theorem. If $\underline{P} \varepsilon \underset{\underline{A}}{A} \underline{\underline{\underline{A}}}$ is nilpotent and critical, $A_{1}(\underline{P}) \neq 1$, then there exists to each natural number $t$ which is prime to the order of $P$, a non-nilpotent critical bigroup $G \varepsilon \underset{\equiv}{\underline{A}} \stackrel{\underline{\underline{A}}}{ }$ with $|K|=t$ and $\underline{E}^{*} \tilde{=} \underline{p}$.
 is nontrivial and self-centralizing in $\bar{G}$ and $\bar{K}$ is a $p^{\prime}$-cycle which acts fixed point free on $\bar{A}$, then there exist critical bigroups $G_{1}, \ldots, G_{W}$ such that each $\underline{F}_{i}^{*}$ is critical, each $\left|K_{i}\right|=|\bar{K}|$ and $\operatorname{svar}\left\{\underline{G}_{1}, \ldots, \underline{G}_{W}\right\}=\operatorname{svar}\{\underline{G}\}$.

Proof. From (3.1.6), $A_{1}(\underline{P})$ is monogenic qua $P$ operator group; also $\underline{P}$ is monolithic. Choose the natural number $s$ so that $t \mid p^{s-1}-1$ but $t+p^{u}-1$ if $u<s$. Let $\underline{P}_{1}, \ldots, P_{s}$ be isomorphic copies of $P$, say $\lambda_{i}: \underline{P}_{1} \rightarrow \underline{P}_{i}$ is an isomorphism. If $a_{i} \varepsilon A_{1}\left(\underline{P}_{i}\right)$ is such that

$$
\left\langle a_{i}\right\rangle^{A_{2}\left(\underline{p}_{i}\right)}=A_{1}\left(\underline{p}_{i}\right)
$$

we may suppose $a_{i}=a_{1} \lambda_{i}, \quad i \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, s\}$.
In the direct product $\underline{P}_{1} \times \quad \times \underline{P}_{s}$ write $A=A_{1}\left(\underline{P}_{1} \times \ldots \times \underline{P}_{-S}\right)$, $H$ for the diagonal of $A_{2}\left(\underline{P}_{1} \times \ldots \times \underline{P}_{s}\right)$; that is

$$
H=\left\{f: f(i)=f(1) \lambda_{i} \in A_{2}\left(\underline{P}_{i}\right)\right\}
$$

and set $\underline{F}=(A H, A, H)$. We aim to extend $F$ by a $t$-cycle so that the resulting bigroup is critical.

Put $A_{0}=\left\langle a_{1}, \ldots, a_{s}\right\rangle \leq A$ and let $K=\left\langle k: k^{t}=1\right\rangle$ be a cycle of order $t$. According to Casey (Theorem 4.2.2 in [4]) there
exists a unique critical group $A_{o} K_{\text {; }}$ in this group let $k$ induce an automorphism $\alpha$ on $A_{0}$. Define the action of $\alpha$ on $H$ to be the identity mapping of $H$. Then $\alpha$ extends to an automorphism of $F$. For, let

$$
r=r\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{s}, h_{1}, \ldots, h_{u}\right)=1
$$

be a relation among the generating set $\left\{\mathrm{a}_{1}, \ldots, \mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{s}}\right\} \cup \mathrm{H}$ of F . Clearly $r=1$ is equivalent to a set of relations

$$
r_{i}=r_{i}\left(a_{i}, h_{1}, \ldots, h_{u}\right)=1, \quad i \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, s\}
$$

Because of the way we have constructed $F_{,} r_{i}=1$ is a relation in $F$ if and only if $r_{i}\left(a_{j}, h_{1}, \ldots, h_{u}\right)=1$ is a relation in $F, i, j \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, s\}$.

If $a_{0}=\prod_{i=1}^{s} a_{i}^{\beta_{i}}$ is any element of $A_{0}$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& r_{i}\left(a_{0}, h_{1}, \ldots, h_{u}\right)=\prod_{j=1}^{s} r_{i}\left(a_{j}^{\beta}, h_{1}, \ldots, h_{u}\right) \\
& =\prod_{j=1}^{s} r_{i}\left(a_{j}, h_{1}, \ldots, h_{u}\right)^{\beta}=1 .
\end{aligned}
$$

By vo Deck's Theorem, $\alpha$ may be extended to an endomorphism of $F$. Since $A_{0} \alpha=A_{0}, F \alpha=F$ and consequently $\alpha$ is an automorphism of $E$.

Next we verify that (FK,A,HK) is critical. As a first step we show that $K$ acts fixed point free on $A$. If $N=A^{P}[A, H]$,

$$
\begin{gathered}
N_{i}=A_{1}\left(\underline{P}_{i}\right)^{p}\left[A_{1}\left(\underline{P}_{i}\right), A_{2}\left(\underline{P}_{i}\right)\right] \text { then } N_{i}=N \cap A_{1}\left(\underline{P}_{i}\right) \text { and } \\
N=N_{1} \times \ldots \times N_{s}
\end{gathered}
$$

so that $A / N \cong A_{1} / \mathbb{N}_{1} \times \ldots \times A_{s} / N_{s} \cong A_{0} / A_{0}^{p}$ where the isomorphisms are K -isomorphisms. Hence K acts faithfully and irreducibly on $\mathrm{A} / \mathrm{N}$. Now there exist elements $h_{1}, \ldots, h_{u} \in H$ and an integer $r \geq 0$ such that

$$
1 \neq x_{i}=\left[a_{i}, h_{1}, \ldots, h_{u}\right]^{p^{\gamma}} \varepsilon O{\underset{P}{i}}, \quad i \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, s\}
$$

and the mapping $a_{i} N \rightarrow x_{i}$ extends to a $K$-homomorphism $\mu$ of $A / N$ into $\sigma \underline{F}$, the socle of $F$. In fact $\mu$ is a $K$-isomorphism since $K$ acts faithfully and irreducibly on $A / N$ and since clearly $\left\langle x_{1}, \ldots, x_{s}\right\rangle$ $=\sigma F$. It follows that $K$ acts faithfully and irreducibly on $\sigma F$, and therefore fixed point free on A. Finally a calculation similar to that in the proof of (3.3.1) shows that the maximal sub-bigroups of FK are precisely $A H_{0} K, A H K{ }_{0}$, NHK where $H_{0}, K_{0}$ are maximal in $H, K$ respectively; and, as in the proof of (3.1.6), $\operatorname{svar}\left(\mathrm{AH}_{0}, \mathrm{~A}, \mathrm{H}_{0}\right)=$ $\operatorname{svar}\left(A_{1}\left(\underline{P}_{1}\right) H_{0}, A_{1}(\underline{P}), H_{0}\right)$, and also $\# \operatorname{svar}(N H, N, H)=\operatorname{svar}\left(N_{1} H, N_{1}, H\right)$. By hypothesis therefore, there exists a biword $q$ which is a bilaw in $\mathrm{AH}_{0}$, NH , but not in AH. If q involves the variables $z_{1}, z_{2}, \ldots, z_{u}$ from $\left\{z_{1}, z_{2}, \ldots,\right\}$ and $t_{1}, \ldots, t_{v}$ are the maximal divisors of $t$, not equal to 1 (if any), consider the biword

$$
q^{\prime \prime}=\left[q^{\prime}, z_{u+1}^{t_{1}}, \ldots, z_{n+v^{t}}^{t_{v}}\right]
$$

where $q^{\prime}$ is obtained from $q$ by replacing $z_{i}$, i $\varepsilon\{1, \ldots, u\}$ by $z_{i}^{t}$. Then $q^{\prime \prime}$ is a bilaw in all maximal sub-bigroups of $F K$ but not
in FK itself. Since FK is monolithic, (5.1.1) concludes the proof of the first part of the theorem.

To prove the second assertion let $\overline{\mathcal{G}}$ be as stated. Now $\overline{\mathrm{F}}=(\overline{\mathrm{AH}}, \overline{\mathrm{A}}, \overline{\mathrm{H}})$ is contained in the bivariety irredundantly generated by some of its critical factors $\underline{F}_{1}^{*}, \ldots, F_{W}^{*}$ say. We may suppose $A_{1}\left(F_{i}^{*}\right) \neq 1$, i $\varepsilon\{1, \ldots, w\}$. For if $A_{1}\left(F_{-1}^{*}\right)$, say, were 1 , then $\exp A_{2}\left(\underline{F}_{1}^{*}\right)>\exp A_{2}\left({\underset{i}{i}}_{*}^{*}\right.$, $\quad i \varepsilon\{2, \ldots$, w $\}$ (or else $F_{1}^{*}$ would be redundant), and then $\underline{E}_{-1}^{*}, \ldots, \mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{W}}^{*}$, and therefore $\overline{\mathrm{F}}$ would have a bilaw $\left[y_{1}, z_{1}^{p^{\beta}}\right.$ ] where $z_{1}^{p^{\beta}}$ is not a bilaw in $\bar{F}$. But $A_{1}(\underline{\bar{F}})$ is nontrivial and self-centralizing in $F$ and therefore we would have a contradiction. According to the first part of the theorem, we may construct critical bigroups $\underline{G}_{1}, \ldots, G_{W}$ from $E_{-1}^{*}, \ldots, F_{W}^{*}$ respectively, and the same cycle isomorphic to $K$. Then sear $\underline{\underline{G}}=\operatorname{svar}\left\{\underline{G}_{1}, \ldots, \underline{W}_{W}\right\}$; for if $q$ is a biword, and $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{v}$ correspond to $q, p, t$ by Theorem 3.4.4, then, by (3.4.5), $q$ is a bilaw in $\overline{\mathcal{G}}$ if and only if $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{v}$ are bylaws in $\bar{F}$, hence if and only if $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{v}$ are bilaws in $E_{1}^{*}, \ldots, F_{W}^{*}$, and therefore if and only if $q$ is a bilaw in $G_{1}, \ldots, G_{W}$.

We have already seen that non-nilpotent critical bigroups in $A$ are critical quâ groups (3.3.4). The converse, suitably interpreted, is also true.
(5.1.3) Theorem. If $G$ is a non-nilpotent, metabelian, critical group, then $G^{\prime}$ is complemented in $G$, say by $B$, and ( $G, G^{\prime}, B$ ) is a critical bigroup. Moreover, all such bigroups arising from G are isomorphic.

Proof. Since $G$ is non-nilpotent there exists a natural number $u$ such that $1 \neq G_{(u)}=G_{(u+1)}=\ldots$. Since $G_{(u)}$ is abelian, it is complemented in $G$, and all such complements are conjugate (Shenkman [1]). The same proof as that of (3.2.1) can now be used, together with (3.1.2); the conjugacy of complements ensures that different bigroups ( $G, G^{\prime}, B$ ) are isomorphic.
5.2 The bivarieties $A_{m} \circ A_{n}$

We commence with a few remarks of a general character.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (5.2.1) Definition. If } \underset{\sim}{B} \text { is a bivariety, define } \\
& \underset{\sim}{B} \phi=\operatorname{svar}\left\{\underline{G} \varepsilon \underset{\sim}{B}: \underline{G} \text { critical, } A_{1} \underline{(G)} \neq 1\right\}, \\
& \underset{\sim}{B} \psi=\left\{\underline{G} \varepsilon \underset{\sim}{B}: A_{1} \underline{(G)}=1\right\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Also define

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \Phi \underset{\sim}{B})=\{\underset{\sim}{C} \phi: \underset{\sim}{C} \subseteq \underset{\sim}{B}\}, \\
& \Psi \underset{\sim}{B})=\{\underset{\sim}{C} \psi: \underset{\sim}{C} \subseteq \underset{\sim}{B}\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

(5.2.2) Definition. Denote the lattice of sub-split-varieties of a split-variety $\underset{\sim}{S}$ by $\Lambda(\underset{\sim}{S})$.
(5.2.3) Lemma. Each of $\Phi(B), \Psi(B)$ equipped with the inclusion order inherited from $\Lambda(B)$ is a complete lattice. The mappings $\phi: \Lambda(B) \rightarrow \Phi(B), \psi: \Lambda(B) \rightarrow \Psi(B)$ are onto latticehomomorphisms.

Proof. Now $\Psi(B)$ is clearly a sub-lattice of $B$, in fact equal to $\Lambda(\underset{\sim}{B} \wedge \equiv O \underline{O}$ ) where $\underset{\underline{O}}{\underline{O}}$ is the variety of all groups). In $\Phi(B)$, the join of any subset is equal to its join in $\Lambda(B)$, and the intersection of any subset is the largest element of $\Phi(B)$ contained in all elements of the subset: indeed if ${\underset{\sim}{i}}^{C} \leq \underset{\sim}{B}(i \varepsilon I)$, then

$$
i\left\{\underset{\sim}{C}{ }_{i} \phi: i \varepsilon I\right\}=\left(\wedge\left\{\underset{\sim}{C_{i}}: i \varepsilon I\right\}\right) \phi
$$

 \left. in section 5.4 with ${\underset{\sim}{C}}_{1}={\underset{=}{A}}_{A_{2}}^{\circ}{\underset{=}{A}}_{4} \wedge{\underset{\sim}{N}}_{3}, \quad{\underset{\sim}{\sim}}_{2}=V_{\sim}\right)$.

That $\psi$ is a homomorphism follows since the bilaws defining $\underset{\sim}{C} \psi$ for any $\underset{\sim}{C}$ are precisely $\underline{C} \cap A_{2}\left(\underline{Q}_{2}\right)=\underline{C} \sigma_{1} \quad$ (by (1.2.8)), and $\sigma_{1}$ is a lattice homomorphism. To show that $\phi$ is a homomorphism we need the following lemma.
(5.2.4) Lemma. If $\underline{G}$ is critical with $\left.A_{1} \underline{G}\right) \neq 1$, and if

$$
\underline{G} \varepsilon \operatorname{svar}\left\{\underline{G}_{j}: j \varepsilon J\right\} \vee E \circ \underline{\underline{E}}
$$

where for each $j, A_{\mathcal{L}}\left(\underline{G}_{j}\right) \neq 1$, then

$$
\underline{G} \varepsilon \operatorname{svar}\left\{\underline{G}_{-j}: j \varepsilon J\right\} .
$$

Proof. If $q$ is a bilaw in all $G_{j}$ we may assume by virtue of (2.2.1) that either $q \in A_{1}\left(\underline{O}_{2}\right)$ or $q \in A_{2}\left(\underline{Q}_{2}\right)$. Write $q^{p}=q$ in the first case, and $q^{\gamma}=\left[y_{1}, q\right]$ in the second: then $q^{\prime}$ is a bilaw in all $G_{j}$ and in $E \circ \underline{\underline{O}}$, whence in $\underline{G}$. Since $A_{1}(\underline{G})$ is nontrivial, and the centralizer of $A_{1}(\underline{G})$ in $A_{2}(\underline{G})$ is trivial, we deduce that $q$ is a bilaw in $\underline{G}$. This completes the proof.

Returning to the proof of (5.2.3) we note that, if $\underset{\sim}{G} \in \underset{\sim}{C} \underset{\sim}{D}$ is critical, and $A_{1}(\underline{G}) \neq 1$, then by (5.2.4), $G \in \underset{\sim}{C} \mathcal{C}_{\vee} \underset{\sim}{D} \phi$, whence

$$
(\underset{\sim}{C} \vee \underset{\sim}{\mathrm{D}}) \phi \subseteq \underset{\sim}{C} \phi \vee \underset{\sim}{\mathrm{D}} \phi .
$$

As the converse inclusion is obvious this shows that $\phi$ is a joinhomomorphism. By definition, $\phi$ is an intersection homomorphism, so (5.2.3) is proved.
(5.2.5) Theorem. If $\underset{\sim}{B}$ is a bivariety in which every subbivariety is generated by finite bigroups, then $\Lambda(\mathbb{B})$ is a subdirect product of $\Phi(B)$ and $\Psi(B)$.

Proof. In this case, if $\underset{\sim}{C} \subseteq \mathrm{~B}_{\sim}$, then

$$
\underset{\sim}{C}=\underset{\sim}{C} \psi
$$

and therefore $\underset{\sim}{C} \phi=\underset{\sim}{D} \phi, \quad \underset{\sim}{C} \psi=\underset{\sim}{D} \psi$ implies $\underset{\sim}{C}=\underset{\sim}{D}$, whence the result.
(5.2.6) Corollary. If $\underset{\sim}{B}$ is a bivariety every sub-bivariety of which is generated by finite bigroups, then $\Lambda(\underset{\sim}{B})$ is distributive if and only if $\Phi(\underset{\sim}{B}), \Psi \underset{\sim}{(B)}$ are distributive.

We start our investigation proper of $A$ case when $m=p^{\alpha}, \quad n=p^{\beta} N$ where $p+N$ and $p$ is prime.
(5.2.7) Theorem. $\Lambda\left({\underset{\mathrm{P}}{\mathrm{A}}}_{\alpha} 0 \stackrel{{\underset{\mathrm{P}}{ }}_{\mathrm{A}}^{B_{N}}}{ }\right)$ can be embedded sub-directly into the lattice.
where $s$ is the number of divisors $1=t_{1}, \ldots, t_{s}$ of $N$. Indeed there exist onto lattice-homomorphisms $\lambda_{0}: \Lambda\left(\underset{p_{\alpha}^{A}}{\alpha} 0 \underset{=}{A} \beta_{N}\right) \rightarrow$


(i)

$$
\begin{align*}
& t_{i} \mid t_{j} \text { implies } \underset{\sim}{S \lambda_{j} \subseteq \underset{\sim}{S \lambda_{i}}, 1 \leq 1, j \leq s,} \\
& \underset{\sim}{S \lambda_{0}}=E \circ{\underset{\sim}{E}}_{t_{i}} \text { implies } \underset{\sim}{S \lambda_{j}}=E \circ E, t_{j} \dagger t_{i} \tag{ii}
\end{align*}
$$

Before proving this result we need a lemma similar to (5.2.4), and, if the bigroups involved are thought of as groups, Identical with a special case of a result of Kovacs and iTewman ((1.12) in [5]).
(5.2.8) Lemma. Let $\left\{\underline{G}_{i}: i \in I\right\},\left\{\underline{H}_{j}: j \in J\right\}$ be critical bigroups in $A_{m} \circ A_{n}(m, n>0)$, where each $G_{i}$ is non-nilpotent, and each $H_{j}$ is nilpotent. If $\underline{G}$ is critical and not nilpotent and

$$
\underline{G} \varepsilon \operatorname{svar}\left\{\underline{G}_{i}, \mathbb{H}_{j}: i \varepsilon I, j \in J\right\},
$$

then

$$
\underline{G} \varepsilon \operatorname{svar}\left\{\underline{G}_{i}: i \varepsilon I, \quad|K|| | K_{i} \mid, \quad \operatorname{exp\sigma } \underline{G}=\operatorname{exp\sigma } \underline{G}_{-1}\right\}
$$

(in the notation of (3.2.1)).

Proof. Suppose first that $q$ is a bilaw in all $G_{i}$, $H_{j}$ such that $p=\exp \sigma G_{i}=\exp \sigma H_{j}=\exp \sigma G$. As usual we may suppose that either $q \in A_{1}\left(Q_{2}\right)$ or $q \in A_{2}\left(Q_{2}\right)$ write $q^{\prime}$ for $q$ in the first case and for $\left[y_{1}, q\right]$ in the latter. If $m=p^{\gamma} m^{\prime}$ where $p+m^{\prime}$, then $q^{\prime m^{\prime}}$ is a bilaw in all $G_{i}, \quad{\underset{J}{j}}$ and therefore in $\underline{G}$. Since $p+m^{\prime}, q^{\prime}$ is a bilaw in $G$ and therefore $q$ is a bilaw in $G$ since $A_{1}(G)$ is self-centralizing.

Without loss of generality, then, we may suppose that expo ${ }_{i}=$ expo $_{f}$ $=p$ for all $i, j$. Then let $q$ be a bilaw in all $\underline{G}_{i}$ such that $|K|\left|\left|K_{i}\right|\right.$ : again we may assume $q \varepsilon A_{1}\left(\underline{Q}_{2}\right)$ or $q \varepsilon A_{2}\left(\underline{Q}_{2}\right)$ and define $q^{\prime}$ as in the last paragraph. If $\left\{n_{1}, \ldots, n_{u}\right\}=\left\{\left|r_{i}\right|: i \in I,|K| t\left|K_{i}\right|\right\}$ then

$$
\left[q^{\rho}, z_{r+i}^{p^{\beta} n_{1}}, \ldots, z_{r+u}^{p^{\beta} n_{u}}\right.
$$

is a bilaw in all $\underline{G}_{i}, \underline{F}_{j}$, where $p^{\beta}| | n$ and $r$ is chosen large enough to avoid $z^{\prime} s$ which occur in $q$. owever, since $K$ acts fixed point free on $A_{1}(\underline{G}), q^{\prime}$ is a bilaw in $\underline{G}$ and, as before, $q$ is a bilaw in G .


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \underset{\sim}{S} \lambda_{0}=\underset{\sim}{S} \wedge \cong 0 \underset{=N}{A_{N}}, \\
& \underset{\sim}{S} \lambda_{i}=\operatorname{svar}\left\{\underline{E}^{*}: \underline{G} \varepsilon \underset{\sim}{S}-\underset{\underline{E}}{ } 0{\underset{E N}{N}}^{A_{N}} \text { critical, } t_{i}=|K|\right\},
\end{aligned}
$$

i $\varepsilon\{1, \ldots, s\}$, where we interpret $\underline{F}^{*}=\underline{G}, K=1$ in case $\underline{G}$ is a p-group. If $\underset{\mathcal{B}}{\varepsilon} \underset{\sim}{S}$ is critical, with $|K|=t_{j}$ and $t_{i} \mid t_{j}$ write $\bar{G}$ for the sub-bigroup $(\overline{F K}, A, H \times \bar{K})$ of $\underline{G}$ where $|\overline{\mathrm{K}}|=\mathrm{t}_{i}$. From (5.1.2), there exist critical bigroups $G_{1}, \ldots, G_{v}$ with $\left|M_{\ell}\right|=t_{i}$ such that $\operatorname{svar}\left\{\underline{G}_{1}, \ldots, \underline{G}_{W}\right\}=\operatorname{svar}\{\underline{\bar{G}}\}, \quad \operatorname{svar}\left\{\underline{\underline{F}}_{-1}^{*}, \ldots, \underline{F}_{W}^{*}\right\}=\operatorname{svar}\left\{\underline{F}^{*}\right\} . \quad$ Hence

$\left\{\underline{F^{*}}: \underline{G} \varepsilon S-\underline{\underline{E}} \circ \underline{A_{N}}, t_{j}=|K|\right\}$ is empty, and therefore $\underset{\sim}{S} \lambda_{j}=E \subset \underset{\underline{E}}{E}$.
We have to show that the $\lambda_{i}$ are homomorphisms. Clearly $\lambda_{0}$ is an intersection-homomorphism; and it is a join homomorphism since

 $\left(\underset{\sim}{S} \vee{\underset{\sim}{S}}^{\gamma}\right) \lambda_{0} \subseteq{\underset{\sim}{S}}_{\mathrm{S}}^{\sim} 0 \vee{\underset{\sim}{S}}^{\rho} \lambda_{0}$ and as the opposite inclusion is obvious, we have dealt with $\lambda_{0}$.

Now suppose $\underset{G}{G} \underset{\sim}{S} \times \underset{\sim}{S}{ }^{i}$ is critical and $t_{i}=|\mathrm{K}| ;$ by (5.2.8) $\underline{G} \varepsilon \operatorname{svar}\left\{\underline{G}_{j}: \underline{G}_{j} \varepsilon \underset{\sim}{S}\right.$ or ${\underset{\sim}{G}}_{j} \varepsilon \underset{\sim}{S^{j}},{\underset{-}{G}}_{j}$ critical, $\left.t_{i}| | K_{j} \mid\right\}$, and so

$$
\begin{aligned}
\underline{F}^{*} & \varepsilon \operatorname{svar}\left\{{\underset{\sim}{F}}_{j}^{*}: \underline{G}_{j} \varepsilon \underset{\sim}{S} \cup{\underset{\sim}{S}}^{\prime} \text { critical, } t_{i}| | K_{j} \mid\right\} \\
& =v\left\{\underset{\sim}{S} \lambda \ell_{\ell}{\underset{\sim}{S}}^{S^{\prime} \lambda_{\ell}}: t_{i} \mid t_{\ell}\right\} \\
& =\underset{\sim}{S} \lambda_{i} \vee{\underset{\sim}{S}}^{\prime} \lambda_{i}
\end{aligned}
$$

whence $\left(\underset{\sim}{S} \vee{\underset{\sim}{r}}^{S^{i}}\right) \lambda_{i} \subseteq \underset{\sim}{S} \lambda_{i} \vee{\underset{\sim}{S}}^{i} \lambda_{i}$. The converse inclusion is clear so we have shown that $\lambda_{i}$ is a join-homomorphism. To show that $\lambda_{i}$ is an intersection-homomorphism, suppose that $\underline{P} \varepsilon \underset{\sim}{S} \lambda_{i} \wedge{\underset{\sim}{S}}_{i}^{i} \lambda_{i}$ is critical and $A_{1}(\underline{P}) \neq 1$ (in the case $t_{i} \neq 1$ ). By (5.1.2) there exists a critical bigroup $\underline{G}$ with $\underline{F}^{*} \cong \underline{P}$ and $|K|=t_{i}$; it follows from (3.4.4) in a
 $\operatorname{svar}\left\{\underline{G}_{j} \varepsilon{\underset{\sim}{S}}^{\prime}: \underline{G}_{j}\right.$ critical, $\left.\quad t_{i}=\left|K_{j}\right|\right\}$, or $\underline{G} \varepsilon \underset{\sim}{S} \wedge{\underset{\sim}{S}}^{S^{i}}$ 。 Thus
$\underline{F}^{*} \varepsilon\left(\underset{\sim}{S} \wedge{\underset{\sim}{S}}^{\prime}\right) \lambda_{i}$, and therefore

$$
{\underset{\sim}{S}}_{i} \wedge{\underset{\sim}{S}}^{\prime} \lambda_{i} \subseteq\left(\underset{\sim}{S} \wedge{\underset{\sim}{S}}^{\prime}\right) \lambda_{i}
$$

as the opposite inclusion is obvious, $\lambda_{i}$ is an intersectionhomomorphism. Note that the case $t_{i}=1$ is easy, since ${\underset{\sim}{~} \lambda_{1}}=$ $\underset{\sim}{S} \wedge \stackrel{A}{=}{ }_{p}{ }^{\circ} \stackrel{A}{\underline{=}}{ }_{p} \beta^{\circ}$

Finally, note that $\underset{\sim}{S}$ is determined uniquely by the $\underset{\sim}{S} \lambda_{i}$, $0 \leq i \leq s$; for, if $\underset{\sim}{S} \lambda_{i}={\underset{\sim}{S}}^{i} \lambda_{i}$ for all $i$, and if for $i \geq 1$, $\underline{G} \varepsilon \underset{\sim}{S}$ is critical with $|\mathrm{K}|=\mathrm{t}_{\dot{i}}$, then $\underline{F}^{*} \varepsilon{\underset{\sim}{S}}^{\gamma} \lambda_{i}$, and using (3.4.4) again we deduce $\underline{G} \in{\underset{\sim}{S}}^{\prime}$; hence $\underset{\sim}{S} \subseteq{\underset{\sim}{S}}^{\prime}$, and, in a similar manner, $\underset{\sim}{S^{\prime}} \subseteq \underset{\sim}{S}$, or $\underset{\sim}{S}=\underset{\sim}{S}$. This then shows that the mapping
 is clearly sub-direct.
(5.2.9) Theorem. If $m, n>0, m=p_{1}^{\alpha} 1 \ldots p_{r}^{\alpha_{r}}$ for distinct primes $p_{1}, \ldots, p_{r}$, then $\Lambda\left(A_{n} 0 A_{A_{n}}\right)$ is a sub-direct product of $\Lambda\left(\underset{\mathrm{P}_{i}}{\mathrm{~A}_{i}} \circ \stackrel{A}{=n}_{\mathrm{A}}\right)$, i $\varepsilon\{1, \ldots, r\}$ according to homomorphisms

$$
\text { for } \underset{\sim}{B} \subseteq{\underset{\mathrm{~A}}{\mathrm{~m}}} \circ{\underset{\underline{n}}{ } .} .
$$

Proof. That each $\mu_{i}$ is an intersection homomorphism is obvious. To prove that it is a join-homomorphism we must show that for $\underset{\sim}{B}, \underset{\sim}{C} \subseteq$ $A \mathrm{~A}^{\circ} \stackrel{A}{=}$,

$$
(\underset{\sim}{B} \vee \underset{\sim}{C}) \mu_{i} \subseteq \underset{\sim}{B} \mu_{i} \vee{\underset{\sim}{C}}_{i}{ }_{i}
$$

since the converse is clear. If $\underline{G} \varepsilon \underset{\sim}{\sim} \underset{\sim}{C} \underset{\sim}{C}) \underset{p_{i}}{A} \alpha_{i} 0 \underset{=}{A}$, and
$A_{1}(\underline{G}) \neq 1$ then Lemma 5.2 .8 yields $\left.\underline{G} \varepsilon \underset{\sim}{(B)} \underset{p_{i}}{A} \alpha_{i} 0 \underset{n}{A_{n}}\right) \vee$
$\left.\underset{\sim}{C} \wedge \underset{p_{i}}{A} \alpha_{i} \circ \underset{=n}{A}\right)$ which is what we want; if $A_{1}(\underline{G})=1$, then
$\underline{G} \varepsilon(\underset{\sim}{B} \vee \underset{\sim}{C}) \wedge \underset{\underline{E}}{\mathrm{E}} \circ \underset{\underset{\sim}{A}}{A_{n}}=(\underset{\sim}{B} \vee \underset{\sim}{C}) \psi=\underset{\sim}{B} \psi \vee \underset{\sim}{C} \psi \leq \underset{\sim}{G} \mu_{i} \vee \underset{\sim}{C} \mu_{i}$,
using (5.2.3). Finally note that for $\underset{\sim}{B} \subseteq A_{-m} \circ{\underset{i n}{n}}_{A_{n}}$,

$$
\underset{\sim}{B}=v\left\{\underset{\sim}{B} \mu_{i}: 1 \leq i \leq r\right\}
$$

and therefore the theorem is proved.
(5.2.10) Corollary. If $\underset{\sim}{B} \leq \underset{=}{A} \circ{\underset{\sim}{A}}_{A}$, then $\left.\Lambda \underset{\sim}{B}\right)$ is distributive if and only if for each $p_{i} \mid m$, each $\left.\Lambda \underset{\sim}{B}\right) \mu_{i} \lambda_{j}$ is distributive, where $\lambda_{j}$ are defined for each $i$ as in (5.2.7).

Proof. Since the homomorphisms $\mu_{i}$ provide a sub-direct decomposition of $\Lambda(\underset{\sim}{B})$ then $\Lambda(\underset{\sim}{B})$ is distributive if and only if each sub-direct factor of it is; that is, if and only if each $\Lambda(\underset{\sim}{B}) \mu_{i}$ is distributive. From (5.2.7), and for the same reason, each $\Lambda \underset{\sim}{B}) \mu_{i}$ is distributive if and only if $\Lambda(\underset{\sim}{B}) \mu_{i} \lambda_{j}$ is distributive.

Theorem 5.2.7 can be formulated, a little artificially, but in some respects more naturally, in a different manner using the concept of products of split-varieties introduced in section 1.7. Here we give an informal discussion without proof of how this can be done. Note that if $\underline{G}=(G, A, B) \varepsilon A^{\circ}{ }^{A} \beta_{\mathbb{N}}$ then $B$ can be written uniquely as



$$
\underline{G} x=(G, A, H, K)
$$

is easily verified to be one-to-one, to take sub-bigroups to subtrigroups and to take quotient bigroups to quotient trigroups. We can, moreover, easily turn $X$ into a functor: if $\mu: \underline{G} \rightarrow \underline{\underline{G}}$ then clearly $\mu$ is a morphism between $\underline{G} X$ and $\overline{\underline{G}} X$. Define $\mu X=\mu$. We can, in these terms, state




$$
\underset{\sim}{S} \chi=v\left\{{\underset{\sim}{S}}^{S} \circ \underset{=}{A_{t}} \wedge \underset{\sim}{T}: t \mid \mathbb{N}\right\}
$$




The proof is in many respects similar to that of (5.2.7) and we omit it.

Finally in this section, we investigate the nature of joindecompositions of $A_{-\mathbb{L}}^{\circ} \stackrel{A_{\mathrm{n}}}{ }$.
(5.2.12) Theorem. If $m=p_{1}^{\alpha} \ldots p_{r}^{\alpha} r$ for distinct primes $p_{1}, \ldots, p_{r}$ then
and this is the only way that $A_{\mathrm{m}} \circ \mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{n}}$ can be written as an irredundant join of join-irreducibles.
 irreducible; this is patent for $\beta=0$. We use induction on $\beta$,


 Chapter 4 slightly) then in $\underline{W}^{W}$,

$$
\underline{B}_{1} \cap \underline{B}_{2}=1 .
$$

Clearly we may suppose that $\underline{B}_{1}, \underline{B}_{2}$ are contained in $A_{1}\left(\underline{V}_{V}\right)$. Then by (4.3.8) there exist $\underline{L}_{1}, \underline{L}_{2} \varepsilon \Lambda\left(\underline{V}_{V-1}\right)$ and integers $v_{1}, v_{2}$ such that

$$
\left[\underline{L}_{i} \lambda_{v}, v_{i} \underline{W}_{v}\right] \leq \underline{B}_{i} \leq \underline{L}_{i} \lambda_{v}, \quad i=1,2 .
$$

Therefore $\left[\underline{L}_{1} \lambda_{\nu} \cap \underline{L}_{2} \lambda_{\nu},\left(v_{1}+v_{2}\right){\underset{V}{W}}\right] \leq \underline{B}_{1} \cap \underline{B}_{2}=1$ whence, by (4.2.15), $\underline{L}_{1} \lambda_{V} \cap \underline{L}_{2} \lambda_{V}=1$ which yields $\left(\underline{L}_{1} \cap \underline{L}_{2}\right) \lambda_{V}=1$ or $\underline{L}_{1} \cap \underline{L}_{2}=1$ from (4.3.2). By hypothesis, $\underline{L}_{1}$ say, is trivial and therefore $\underline{B}_{1}=1$, proving what we want.

Next suppose that for $\mathrm{p} f \mathrm{~N}$ (and $\alpha>0$ ),

From (5.2.7) we have that for each $t_{i} \mid N$,

$$
\stackrel{A}{=}_{p} \circ \stackrel{A}{=}_{p} \beta=\underset{\sim}{S} \lambda_{i} \vee{\underset{\sim}{S}}^{\prime} \lambda_{i}
$$

in particular, with $t_{i}=N, \quad \underset{\sim}{S} \lambda_{N}={\underset{\mathrm{p}}{ }}_{A}^{A} \stackrel{N}{\underline{p}}^{A}{ }_{\mathrm{p}}$ say. Hence


Certainly, then, $A_{\mathrm{m}} \circ \hat{A}_{\mathrm{n}}$ has a decomposition as an irredundant join of join-irreducibles. Suppose that

$$
\underset{=m}{A} \circ A_{=n}=B_{\sim}^{B} \vee \cdots \vee{\underset{\sim}{t}}_{B_{t}}
$$

is another such decomposition. Then using (5.2.9) we have for each i $\varepsilon\{1, \ldots, r\}$

$$
\stackrel{A}{\mathrm{p}_{i}} \alpha_{i} 0 \stackrel{A}{=}={\underset{\sim}{B}}_{1}^{\mu_{i}}{ }_{i} \vee \cdots \vee{\underset{\sim}{t}}_{i}^{B_{i}}
$$

whence for some $j \in\{1, \ldots, t\}$,

$$
\underset{P_{i}}{\mathcal{A}_{i}} \quad \circ \stackrel{A}{=}=\underset{\sim}{B_{j}} \mu_{i} \leq \underset{\sim}{B}
$$

 does contain an $\underset{=}{A} \alpha_{i} \stackrel{A}{=}$ since otherwise it is clearly redundant.
 $\underset{\sim}{B}=\underset{\sim}{B} \mu_{i}$ for some i. That is,
whence $\underset{\sim}{B}{ }_{j}=\underset{\underline{\underline{A}}}{p_{i}} \alpha_{i} \circ{\underset{\underline{Z}}{n}}$, and this completes the proof.

### 5.3 The bivarieties $A_{m}^{\circ}{ }_{=}^{A}$.

 been reduced to the case when $m, n$ are powers of the same prime. In general this case seems to be difficult. The results of Chapter 4 show that we can obtain upper and lower bounds for each sub-bivariety
 fine structure escapes us in general. Only in the case $\beta=1$ do we get a complete picture. First we prove two lemmas similar to (4.2.7).
(5.3.1) Lemma. If in the notation of (4.2.2), $a_{0}, \ldots, a_{p-1} \varepsilon A$ are fixed elements, and if $\underline{U}$ is normal in $\underbrace{W}_{V}$ such that for all $b \in B$

$$
\rho=\prod_{i=0}^{p-1}\left[a_{i}, i b\right] \varepsilon \underline{U},
$$

then $a_{i} \in U_{i}, \quad i \in\{0, \ldots, p-1\}$.
Proof. Using the identity $\left[x, y{ }^{r}\right]=\underset{i=1}{r}[x, i y]\binom{r}{i}$, we may
express as

$$
\rho=\prod_{i=0}^{p-1}\left[a_{i}^{\prime}, b^{i}\right] \varepsilon \underline{U}
$$

where each $a_{i}^{\prime}$ is a linear combination of $a_{i}, \ldots, a_{p-1}$, and $a_{p-1}^{\prime}=a_{p-1}$. From (4.2.7) we deduce that $a_{p-1} \in U_{p-1}$, whence

$$
\prod_{i=0}^{p-2}\left[a_{i}, i b\right] \in \underline{U} .
$$

An easy induction is indicated to finish the proof, and we omit the details.
(5.3.2) Lemma. Define $\underset{\sim}{\mu}=\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{s}\right)$ where $0 \leq \mu_{i} \leq p-1$ for all i. If $a(\mu)$ are fixed elements of $A$, and if for all $b_{1}, \ldots, b_{s} \varepsilon B$

$$
\underset{\mu}{\pi}\left[a(\underset{\sim}{\mu}), \mu_{1} b_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{s} b_{s}\right] \varepsilon \underline{U}
$$

(where $\underline{U}$ is normal in $\underset{\sim}{W}$ ), then $a(\underset{\sim}{\mu}) \varepsilon U_{\tau}$ where $\tau=\mu_{1}+\ldots+\mu_{s}$.

Proof. We proceed by induction on $s$, the case $s=1$ being covered by the last lemma. For i $\varepsilon\{0, \ldots, p 1\}$ write

$$
a_{i}=\prod_{\mu_{s}=i}\left[a(\underset{\sim}{\mu}), \mu_{1} b_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{s-1} b_{s-1}\right]
$$

then $\prod_{i=0}^{p-1}\left[a_{i}, i b\right] \varepsilon \underline{U}$ for all $b \in B$. Hence by (5.3.1),
$a_{i} \varepsilon U_{i}, \quad$ i $\varepsilon\{0, \ldots, p-1\}$. Now $\mu_{s}=\mu_{s}^{\prime}$ implies $\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{s-1}\right) \neq$
$\left(\mu_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, \mu_{s-1}^{\prime}\right)$ if $\underset{\sim}{\mu} \sim{\underset{\sim}{\sim}}^{\mu}$. We may then, by induction, assume that

$$
a(\underset{\sim}{\mu}) \varepsilon\left(U_{i}\right)_{j}
$$

where $j=\mu_{1}+\ldots+\mu_{s-1}$. That is, $a(\underset{\sim}{\mu}) \varepsilon U_{\tau}, \quad \tau=i+j=$ $\mu_{1}+\ldots+\mu_{s}$, for each $\underset{\sim}{\mu}$ as required.

Before commencing the statement and proof of our main results in this chapter, we introduce the following notation. Write $X_{\alpha}$ for the split-free bigroup of rank ( $1, \omega$ ) in $\underset{p^{A}}{A} \circ \stackrel{A}{=}$ on the split-free generating set $\left\{y_{1}\right\} \cup\left\{z_{1}, z_{2}, \ldots\right\}$. It is clear from (4.2.1) that the lattice of normal, fully invariant sub-bigroups of $X_{\alpha}$ is dually isomorphic to $\Lambda\left({\underset{p}{A}}_{\alpha} \circ{\underset{\underline{D}}{A})}\right.$. Write ( $d, \sigma$ ) for the fully invariant closure of $\left[y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{d}\right]^{p^{\sigma}}$ in $X_{-\alpha} ;$ abusing convention, then
(5.3.3) Notation. For $\mathrm{d} \geq 0, \sigma \in\{0,1, \ldots, \alpha-1\}$

$$
(d, \sigma)=\operatorname{cl}\left\{\left[y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{d}\right]^{\sigma}\right\}
$$

(5.3.4) Theorem. Every fully invariant sub-bigroup of $X_{-\alpha}$ contained in $A_{1}\left(X_{\alpha}\right)$ can be written as a product of finitely many $(d, \sigma)$ 's.

Proof. From (2.2.4), every fully invariant $\underline{U}$ contained in $A_{1}\left(X_{\alpha}\right)$ is the closure of special bywords of the type

$$
q=\prod_{i=1}^{t}\left[y_{1}, \mu_{i 1} z_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{i s} z_{s}\right]_{i}^{\alpha_{i}}
$$

where $1 \leq \mu_{i j} \leq p-1, \quad 1 \leq \alpha_{i} \leq p^{\alpha}-1$, all $i, j$, and where $i \neq j$ implies $\left(\mu_{i 1}, \ldots \mu_{i s}\right) \neq\left(\mu_{j 1}, \ldots, \mu_{j s}\right)$. Lemma 5.3 .2 gives that

$$
y_{I}^{\alpha_{i}} \varepsilon(c 1\{q\})_{\tau_{i}} ; \quad \tau_{i}=\mu_{i 1}+\ldots+\mu_{i s}
$$

Clearly, then, $q$ is equivalent to a set of $(d, \sigma)^{\prime} s$ and therefore so is $\underline{U}$.

With this theorem we can in fact determine all sub-bivarieties of ${ }_{\underline{A}} \alpha^{\circ} \stackrel{A}{p}$. however we have as yet no way of knowing when two different sets of ( $d, \sigma$ )'s determine different sub-bivarieties. We take up this problem now.
(5.3.5) Theorem. The commutators

$$
\left[y_{1}, \mu_{1} z, \ldots, \mu_{r} z_{r}\right]
$$

$r \geq 0,0 \leq \mu_{i} \leq p-1$ for $i \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, r\}$ and $\mu_{r}>0$, form a basis for $A_{1}\left(\underline{X}_{\alpha}\right)$. If $d>0$, then a basis for $(d, \sigma)$ is the set of all $b^{P^{\tau}}$, where $b$ is a basic commutator of weight $\geq 2$ and where $\tau$ is minimal with respect to $\sigma \leq \tau$ and $w t \mathrm{~b}+(\tau-\sigma)(\mathrm{p}-1) \geq \mathrm{d}+1$; the set $\left\{b^{P^{\sigma}}: b\right.$ basic $\}$ is a basis for $(0, \sigma)$.

Proof. The set of commutators of the type described certainly generate $A_{1}\left(X_{\alpha}\right)$ : the only thing to check is that, using the identity

$$
\left[y_{1}, p z_{1}\right]=\prod_{i=1}^{p}\left[y_{1}, i z_{1}\right]\binom{p}{i}
$$

we can remove $p$ or more repetitions of any variable $z_{j}$, replacing the offending commutator by a product of commutators each of which has fewer than $p$ occurences of $z_{j}$. That these commutators with few repetitions are basic follows from (5.3.2); for, if

$$
\prod_{i=1}^{t}\left[y_{1}, \mu_{i 1}{ }^{2}{ }_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{i s_{i}}{ }_{s_{i}}\right]^{\alpha}=1
$$

where $\left(\mu_{i 1}, \ldots, \mu_{i s_{i}}\right) \neq\left(\mu_{j 1}, \ldots, \mu_{j s_{j}}\right), \quad i \neq j$ and $0 \leq \mu_{i \ell} \leq p 1$, $\mu_{i s_{i}}>0, \quad i \varepsilon\{1, \ldots, t\}, \quad \ell \varepsilon\left\{1, \ldots, s_{i}\right\}$, then, if $s=\max \left\{s_{i}\right.$ : $1 \leq i \leq t\}$ we have by defining $\mu_{i \ell}=0$ for $s_{i}<\ell \leq s$ where necessary, that

$$
\prod_{i=1}^{t}\left[y_{1}, \mu_{i 1} z_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{i s} z_{s}\right]_{i}^{\alpha}=1
$$

with $\left(\mu_{i 1}, \ldots, \mu_{i s}\right) \neq\left(\mu_{j 1}, \ldots, \mu_{j s}\right), i \neq j$. We may therefore apply Lemma 5.3.2 to deduce for each i $\varepsilon\{1, \ldots, t\}$, that

$$
\left[y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{\tau}\right]^{\alpha_{i}}=1
$$

where $\tau=\mu_{i 1}+\ldots+\mu_{i s} \quad$ this would then be a bilaw in $X_{\alpha}$ and therefore $p^{\alpha} \mid \alpha_{i}$. For if not, then $\left[y_{1}^{p^{\alpha-1}}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{\tau}\right]=1$ and therefore $\left[y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{\tau}\right]$ is a bilaw in $C_{p}$ we $C_{p}^{\tau}$, which is not true (see Liebeck [13]). Fence $p^{\alpha} \mid \alpha_{i}$ for all $i$, and this shows that the set of commutators $\left[y_{1}, \mu_{1} z_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{r} z_{r}\right]$ with $r \geq 0,0 \leq \mu_{i} \leq p-1$ and $\mu_{r}>0$ is a basis for $A_{1}\left(a_{\alpha}\right)$.

It is quite clear that the set $\left\{\mathrm{b}^{\mathrm{p}^{\alpha}}: b\right.$ basic $\}$ is a basis for $(0, \sigma)$, but the remaining assertion of the theorem requires proof. The crucial point is the following result.
(5.3.6) Lemma. $(e, \tau) \leq(d, \sigma)$ if and only if $\sigma \leq \tau$ and $d=0$ if $e=0$ and $d \leq e+(\tau-\sigma)(p-1)$ if $e>0$.

Proof. The first part is easy: if $(e, \tau) \leq(d, \sigma)$ then $\left[y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{e}\right]^{p^{\tau}}$ can be written as a product of $p^{\sigma}$-th powers, and hence, if $\sigma>\tau,\left[y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{e}\right]^{p^{\alpha-1}}=1$ which, as we have observed, is impossible. Also if $e=0$ and $d>0$, then $y_{1}^{p^{\tau}}$ can be written as a product of commutators all involving at least one $z_{j}$; then by mapping $y_{1} \rightarrow y_{1}$ and $z_{j} \rightarrow 1$ for all $j$ we have $y_{1}^{p^{\tau}}=1$ which is a contradiction.

Suppose therefore, that $e>0$ and $\sigma \leq \tau$. Then

$$
(5.3 .7) \quad(e, \tau) \leq(e+(\tau-\sigma)(p-1), \sigma)
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
(e, \tau) \not((e+(\tau-\sigma)(p-1)+1, \sigma) \tag{5.3.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Consider the identity

$$
\left[y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{e+r}\right]^{p}=\prod_{i=2}^{p}\left[y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{e+r-1}, i z_{e+r}\right]^{-\binom{p}{i}}
$$

from this one deduces that for $r \leq p-2$

$$
(e+r+1,1) \leq(e+p-1,0) \text { implies }(e+r, 1) \leq(e+p-1,0)
$$

and therefore, by downward induction on $r,(e, 1) \leq(e+p-1,0)$. This then gives by induction on $\tau-\sigma((5.3 .7)$ is trivially true if $\tau=\sigma)$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
(e, \tau) & =(e, 1)^{p^{\tau-1}} \leq(e+p \cdots-1,0)^{p^{\tau-1}} \\
& =(e+p \cdots 1, \tau-1) \leq(e+p \cdots 1+(\tau-1-\sigma)(p-1), \sigma) \\
& =(e+(\tau-\sigma)(p-1), \sigma)
\end{aligned}
$$

This proves (5.3.7). The proof of (5.3.8) is more difficult, and uses the next two lemmas.
(5.3.9) Lemma. If $m>0$ and

$$
\left[y_{1}, m z_{1}\right]=\prod_{i=1}^{p-1}\left[y_{1}, i z_{1}\right]^{\delta(m, i)}
$$

and if $m=p+(\mu-1)(p-1)+r, \quad 0 \leq r<p-1, \quad 0 \leq \mu$, then
i) $\quad \mu=0$ implies $\delta(m, i)=1,0$ according as $m=i$ or $m \neq i$;
ii) $\quad r=0$ implies $p^{\mu} \mid \delta(m, i), \quad 1 \leq i \leq p-1$;
iii) $\quad \mu r \geq 1$ implies $p^{\mu+1} \mid \delta(m, i), \quad 1 \leq i \leq r$
and $\mathrm{p}^{\mu} \mid \delta(\mathrm{m}, \mathrm{i}), \quad \mathrm{r}+1 \leq i \leq \mathrm{p} 1$.

Proof. Clearly (i) is a consequence of the uniqueness already proved in (5.3.5). For $\mu=1, r=0$ (ii) is easily seen to be true. Suppose that the lemma has been proved for some $m$ with $m \geq p$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
{\left[y_{1},(m+1) z_{1}\right] } & =\left[y_{1}, z_{1}, m z_{1}\right] \\
& =\prod_{i=1}^{p-1}\left[y_{1}, z_{1}, i z_{1}\right]^{\delta(m, i)} \\
& =\prod_{i=1}^{p-2}\left[y_{1},(i+1) z_{1}\right] \quad \delta(m, i) \prod_{i=1}^{p-1}\left[y_{1}, i z_{1}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

and so, by the uniqueness from (5.3.5),

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \delta(m+1, i)=\delta(m, i-1)-\binom{p}{i} \delta(m, p-1), \quad 2 \leq i \leq p \cdots 1, \\
& \delta(m+1,1)=-p \delta(m, p-1) .
\end{aligned}
$$

By assumption $p^{\mu+1} \mid \delta(m, i), \quad i \leq r$ and $p^{\mu} \mid \delta(m, 1), \quad r<i$, whence the proof may be completed.
(5.3.10) Lemma. If $m_{1}, \ldots, m_{d} \geq 1$ and

$$
\left[y_{1}, m_{1} z_{1}, \ldots, m_{d} z_{d}\right]=\underset{\sim}{i} \underset{\sim}{\pi}\left[y_{1}, i_{1} z_{1}, \ldots, i_{d} z_{d}\right]_{\sim}^{\beta(i)}
$$

where $\underset{\sim}{i}=\left(i_{1}, \ldots, i_{d}\right)$ with $1 \leq i_{j} \leq p-1$, then $m_{1}+\ldots+$ $m_{d} \geq d+\tau(p-1)+1$ implies $p^{\tau+1} \mid \beta(1, \ldots, 1)$.

Proof. With $d=1$ we have $d+\tau(p-1)+1=p+(\tau-1)(p \cdots 1)+1$ and lemma 5.3.9 applies. We use this as a starting point for induction on $d$. Suppose $m_{d}=\phi(p-1)+\rho \geq 1,0 \leq \rho<p-1$, $0 \leq \phi$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
m_{1}+\ldots+m_{d-1} \geq(d-1)+(\tau-\phi)(p-1)-(\rho-2) \tag{i}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now if $\left[y_{1}, m_{1} z_{1}, \ldots, m_{d-1} z_{d-1}\right]=\underset{\sim}{i}\left[y_{1}, i_{1} z_{1}, \ldots, i_{d-1} z_{d-1}\right]$, then
we may assume inductively that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& p^{\tau-\phi+1} \mid \gamma(1, \ldots, 1) \text { if } \rho \leq 1, \\
& p^{\tau-\phi} \mid \gamma(1, \ldots, 1) \text { if } 1<\rho .
\end{aligned}
$$

Also from (5.3.5),

$$
\beta(1, \ldots 1)=\delta\left(m_{d}, 1\right) \gamma(1, \ldots, 1) ;
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{p}^{\phi+1} \mid \delta\left(\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{d}}, 1\right) \text { if } 1<\rho \\
& \mathrm{p}^{\phi} \mid \delta\left(\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{d}}, 1\right) \text { if } \rho \leq 1
\end{aligned}
$$

In any case, $p^{\tau+1} \mid \beta(1, \ldots, 1)$ as required.

$$
\text { Proof of (5.3.8). If }(e, \tau) \leq(e+(\tau-\sigma)(p-1)+1, \sigma) \text {, then }
$$

(*)

$$
\left[y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{e}\right]^{p^{\tau}}=\underset{\sim}{j}\left[y_{1}, j_{1} z_{1}, \ldots, j_{e} e^{]^{p}}{ }^{\sigma^{\sigma} \beta^{\prime}(\underset{\sim}{j})}\right.
$$

where $j_{1}+\ldots+j_{e} \geq e+(\tau-\sigma)(p-1)+1$. Now (*) can be rewritten by replacing each $\left[y_{1}, j_{1} z_{1}, \ldots, j_{e} z_{e}\right]$ by a product of powers of basic commutators. Then, using the uniqueness from (5.3.5),

$$
\left[y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{e}\right]^{p^{\tau}}=\underset{\sim}{j}\left[y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{e}\right]^{p^{\sigma} \underset{\sim}{j}(\underset{\sim}{j})}
$$

where for each $\underset{\sim}{j}, p^{\tau-\sigma+1} \mid \beta(\underset{\sim}{j})$ by (5.3.10). Hence

$$
p^{\tau}=p^{\sigma} \sum \beta(\underset{\sim}{j}),
$$

and since the right-hand side of this equation is divisible by $p^{\tau+1}$ we have a contradiction. This completes the proof of (5.3.8).

Proof of (5.3.5). If $d>0$ and $b_{1}, \ldots, b_{t}$ are distinct basic commutators such that

$$
{ }_{b_{1}}^{\beta_{1}} \ldots{ }^{b_{t}}{ }^{\beta_{1}} \varepsilon(d, \sigma),
$$

then, from (5.3.2), if $b_{i}$ has weight $e_{i}+1$, and $p^{\tau} \| \beta_{i}$.

$$
\left(e_{i}, \tau_{i}\right) \leq(d, \sigma)
$$

whence, from the part of (5.3.5) already proved, and (5.3.6),

$$
\sigma \leq \tau_{i}, \quad e_{i}>0, d \leq e_{i}+\left(\tau_{i}-\sigma\right)(p-1) .
$$

This completes the proof of (5.3.5).

The main result of this section can now be stated. As the proof is of a routine nature using Theorem 5.3 .5 we will omit most of the details.
(5.3.11) Theorem. Every normal, fully invariant sub-bigroup $\underline{U} \neq 1$ of $\frac{X}{\alpha}$ can be written uniquely as

$$
\underline{U}=A_{2}\left(\underline{X}_{\alpha}\right)^{\varepsilon} \cdot\left(d_{\sigma}, \sigma\right) \ldots\left(d_{\alpha-1}, \alpha-1\right)
$$

where $\varepsilon=0,1$ (according as $z_{1} \notin \underline{U}$ or $z_{1} \varepsilon \underline{U}$ ) and
i) $\varepsilon=1$ implies $\sigma=0, \quad d_{\sigma} \leq 1$;
ii) if $\phi \varepsilon\{\sigma, \ldots, \alpha-2\}$ then

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\leq d_{\phi}-p+1, & \text { if } p \leq d_{\phi}, \\
& \leq 1, \\
d_{\phi+1} & , \text { if } 1 \leq d_{\phi} \leq p-1, \\
& , \text { if } 0=d_{\phi} .
\end{array}
$$

Proof. Theorem 5.3.4 ensures that every $\underline{U} \neq 1$ can be written as a join as indicated: if $z_{1} \varepsilon U$ then $\left[y_{1}, z_{1}\right] \varepsilon U$ and hence $(1,0) \leq \underline{U}$.

Let $\sigma$ be the smallest element of $\{0, \ldots, \alpha-1\}$ for which $(d, \sigma) \leq \underline{U}$ for some integer $d$, and let $d_{\tau}$ be the smallest integer such that $\left(d_{\tau}, \tau\right) \leq \underline{U}$ for $\sigma \leq \tau \leq \alpha-1$. Since by (5.3.6)

$$
(d, \tau+1) \leq(d+p-1, \tau)
$$

for $d>0$, we have that $d_{\tau} \geq p$ implies $d_{\tau+1} \leq d_{\tau} \cdots p+1$. If $1 \leq \mathrm{d}_{\tau} \leq \mathrm{p}-1$ then for all $\mathrm{d}>0$

$$
(d, \tau+1) \leq(d+p-1, \tau) \leq\left(d_{\tau}, \tau\right) \leq U,
$$

hence $d_{\tau+1} \leq 1$. If $d_{\tau}=0$ for some $\tau \varepsilon\{\sigma, \ldots, \alpha-2\}$ then clearly $d_{\tau+1}=\ldots=d_{\alpha-1}=0$. This establishes the existence of such a join decomposition fo: $\underline{U}$.

The uniqueness is a consequence of the next lemma, whose proof we omit.

$$
\text { (5.3.12) Lemma. If }(d, \tau) \leq\left(d_{\sigma}, \sigma\right) \ldots\left(d_{\alpha-1}, \alpha-1\right)
$$ where $d_{\sigma}, \ldots, d_{\alpha-1}$ satisfy the condition (ii) of (5.3.11), then $\sigma \leq \tau$ and $d_{\tau} \leq d$.

(5.3.13) Corollary. Let $J=\{0,1, \ldots, i, \ldots\} \cup\{\infty\}$
and $T=\{0,1\}$ have their natural orders, then the lattice

$$
T \times J^{\alpha}
$$

embeds $\Lambda\left({\underset{\sim}{A}}_{A} \alpha 0 \stackrel{A}{=}\right) \cdot \Lambda\left({\underset{p}{A}}_{A_{p}} 0 \stackrel{A}{=}\right)$ is distributive.

The details of proof are routine and we omit them.
(5.3.14) Corollary. Theorems 5.3.11, 5.2.7 (or 5.2.11) and 5.2.9 afford a complete description of $\Lambda\left(A_{m} \circ A_{n}\right)$ if $m, n$ are nearly coprime. In particular $\Lambda\left(A_{-m} \circ A_{n}\right)$ is distributive in such cases.
5.4 The bivarieties $\stackrel{A}{=} \alpha 0 \stackrel{A}{=} \alpha \sim \stackrel{\sim}{\sim} \mathrm{C}$

In this section we give a classification of another class of bivarieties, and produce an example of a non-distributive bivariety lattice. First note the following:
(5.4.1) Lemma. A bigroup $G \in \stackrel{A}{=} \circ \underline{A}$ has the bilaw $\left[y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{d}\right]^{m}$ if and only if $G$ has the law $\left[x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d+1}\right]^{m}$.

Proof. Now $G$ has the law $\left[x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d+1}\right]^{m}$ if and only if $G$ has the bilaw $\left[y_{1} z_{1}, \ldots, y_{d+1} z_{d+1}\right]^{m}$. Modulo the bilaws of $\xlongequal[=]{A} O$
we have

$$
\left[y_{1} z_{1}, \ldots, y_{d+1} z_{d+1}\right]=\left[y_{1}, z_{2}, \ldots, z_{d+1}\right]^{z_{1}}\left[z_{1}, y_{2}, z_{3}, \ldots, z_{d+1}\right]^{z_{2}}
$$

and therefore $\left[y_{1} z_{1}, \ldots, y_{d+1} z_{d+1}\right]^{m}$ is equivalent, modulo the bilaws of A $\circ$ 䒠, to $\left[y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{d}\right]^{m}$.

Tote that, in particular, $\underline{G}$ has class $c$ if and only if $\underline{G}$ has the bilaw $\left[y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{c}\right]$.
(5.4.2) Notation. Denote by $\underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}} \mathrm{c}$ the variety of all bigroups in $\xlongequal[\underline{A}]{ } \circ \stackrel{A}{\underline{A}}$ of class at most $c$.
(5.4.3) Notation. Let $\underline{Y}_{\alpha}$ be the split-free bigroup of rank
 for the normal fully-invariant closure of $\left[y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{d}\right]^{p^{\sigma}}$ in $\underline{Y}_{\alpha}, \quad d \in\{0, \ldots, p-1\}, \quad \sigma \in\{0, \ldots, \alpha-1\}$.
(5.4.4) Theorem. Every normal, fully invariant sub-bigroup $\underline{U} \neq 1$ of $\underline{Y}_{\alpha}$ can be written uniquely as

$$
\underline{U}=A_{2}\left(\underline{Y}_{\alpha}\right)^{p^{\gamma}}\left(d_{\sigma}, \sigma\right) \ldots\left(d_{\alpha-1}, \alpha-1\right)
$$

where $\gamma \in\{0, \ldots, \alpha\}, \quad \sigma \in\{0, \ldots, \alpha-1\}, \quad p-1 \geq d_{\sigma} \geq \ldots \geq d_{\alpha-1} \geq 0$,
and if $\gamma<\alpha$ then $\sigma \leq \gamma$ and ${ }_{\gamma} \leq 1 . \quad \Lambda\left({\underset{\sim}{A}}_{\alpha}^{\alpha} \circ{\underset{\sim}{\mathrm{A}}}_{\alpha} \wedge \underset{\sim}{\mathbb{N}}\right)$ is distributive.

Proof. That every $\underline{U}$ has a decomposition of this form follows from (2.2.4) and (5.3.2): choose $\sigma$ as the smallest element of $\{0, \ldots, \alpha-1\}$ for which there exists $d \varepsilon\{0, \ldots, p-1\}$ such that ( $d, \sigma$ ) $\leq \underline{U}$, then choose $d_{\tau}$ as the smallest $d$ for which $(d, \tau) \leq \underline{U}$, $\sigma \leq \tau \leq \alpha-1$. Clearly then $d_{\sigma} \geq \cdots \geq d_{\alpha-1}$. The rest of the proof will follow easily from the next lemma which will also prove useful again in this section.
(5.4.5) Lemma. The split-free bigroup of rank $(1,1)$ in $\stackrel{\mathrm{A}}{=} \alpha{ }^{\circ} \stackrel{\mathrm{A}}{\mathrm{A}} \alpha \wedge{ }_{\mathrm{p}}^{\mathrm{N}} \mathrm{p}+1$ (where $\alpha>1$ ) can be presented on the generators $a_{0}, \ldots, a_{p}, b$ subject to the defining relations

$$
\begin{aligned}
& a_{0}^{p^{\alpha}}=\ldots=a_{p-1}^{p^{\alpha}}=a_{p}^{p^{\alpha-1}}=b^{p^{\alpha}}=\left[a_{i}, a_{j}\right]=1, \quad 0 \leq i, j \leq p, \\
& a_{i}^{b}=a_{i} a_{i+1}, \quad a_{p}^{b}=a_{p}, \quad 0 \leq i \leq p-1 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Proof. We omit the details: note that the group presented here is generated by the set $\left\{\mathrm{a}_{0}, \mathrm{~b}\right\}$ and that fairly obviously it is a splitfree generating set. The lower exponent on $a_{p}$ occurs because

$$
1=\left[a_{0}, b^{p^{\alpha}}\right]=\prod_{i=1}^{p}\left[a_{0}, i b\right]\binom{p^{\alpha}}{i}=a_{p}\binom{p^{\alpha}}{p}
$$

Return to the proof of (5.4.4). If $(d, \tau) \leq \underline{U}$ then $(d, \tau) \leq$ $\left(d_{\sigma}, \sigma\right) \ldots\left(d_{\alpha-1}, \alpha-1\right)$ and therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
(d, \alpha-1) & \leq\left(d_{\sigma}, \alpha-\tau-1+\sigma\right) \ldots\left(d_{\tau}, \alpha-1\right) \\
& \leq\left(d_{\tau}, \alpha-\tau-1+\sigma\right) \ldots\left(d_{\tau}, \alpha-1\right) \\
& =\left(d_{\tau}, \alpha, \tau-1+\sigma\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

However Lemma 5.4.5 yields, that even in the free bigroup of rank
 $\mathrm{d} \geq \mathrm{d}_{\tau}, \quad \alpha-1 \geq \alpha-\tau-1+\sigma$; that is, $\mathrm{d} \geq \mathrm{d}_{\tau}$ and $\tau \geq \sigma$, whence $(\mathrm{d}, \tau) \leq\left(\mathrm{d}_{\tau}, \tau\right)$. Since $\gamma$ is quite clearly unique, we have shown that this expression for $\underline{U}$ is unique: it only remains to remark, that $z_{1}^{p^{\gamma}} \varepsilon \underline{U}$ implies $\left[y_{1}, z_{1}^{p^{\gamma}}\right] \varepsilon \underline{U}$ and that $\left[y_{1}, z_{1}^{p^{\gamma}}\right]$ and $\left[y_{1}, z_{1}\right]^{p^{\gamma}}$
 As the case $\alpha=1$ is covered by (5.3.11), this completes the proof of (5.4.4).


Proof. We show that in the split-free bigroup of rank $(1,1)$ in
 $\mathrm{V}_{1}, \mathrm{~V}_{2}, \mathrm{~V}_{3}$ which are pairwise incomparable and whose pariwise joins and
intersections are respectively equal. Let $V_{1}, V_{2}, V_{3}$ be determined by the bilaws

$$
\left[y_{1}, z_{1}\right]^{p}, \quad\left[y_{1}, z_{1}^{p}\right], \quad\left[y_{1}, p z_{1}\right]
$$

respectively, and let $V$ be determined by $\left[y_{1}, 2 z_{1}\right]^{p}$. In the notation of (5.4.5) it is clear that

$$
\begin{aligned}
v & =\left\langle a_{2}^{p}, \ldots, a_{p-1}^{p}\right\rangle \\
v_{1} & =\left\langle a_{1}^{p}, v\right\rangle, \quad v_{3}=\left\langle a_{p}, v\right\rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

Also since

$$
\begin{aligned}
{\left[a_{0}, b^{k p}\right] } & =\prod_{i=1}^{p}\left[a_{0}, i b\right] \\
& \binom{k p}{i}=a_{1}^{k p_{p}}\binom{k p}{p} \\
& =\left(a_{1}^{p} a_{p}\right)^{k}
\end{aligned}
$$

modulo $V$ (using the fact that $\binom{k p}{p} \equiv k(\operatorname{modp})$ ), we have that

$$
\mathrm{v}_{2}=\left\langle\mathrm{a}_{1}^{\mathrm{p}} \mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{p}}, \mathrm{v}\right\rangle
$$

Hence (5.4.5) yields that $V_{1} V_{2}=V_{2} V_{3}=V_{3} V_{1}=\left\langle a_{1}, a_{p}, v\right\rangle$, and $\mathrm{V}_{1} \cap \mathrm{~V}_{2}=\mathrm{V}_{2} \cap \mathrm{~V}_{3}=\mathrm{V}_{3} \cap \mathrm{~V}_{1}=\mathrm{V}$ and clearly $\mathrm{V}_{1}, \mathrm{~V}_{2}, \mathrm{~V}_{3}, \mathrm{~V}$ are all distinct. This completes the proof of (5.4.6); a picture of the
 not here verified that it has this precise form.

Note that, as we have been working only in the free bigroup of rank $(1,1)$ throughout this section, both results could have been formulated in terms of Engel-type bilaws rather than class bilaws.


### 5.5 Applications to metabelian varieties.

In this final section we give some applications of the results and methods we have for the sub-bivarieties of $\xlongequal[=]{A} \xlongequal[=]{A}$ to the subvarieties of $A A$. First let it be noted that as far as the descending chain condition goes, Remark 1.6 .5 already provides a reduction of the problem; we sharpen this slightly. A classification result in terms of prime-power exponent varieties and bivarieties is also given, as is a complete classification of $\Lambda\left(\underset{=m}{A} A_{n}\right)$ when $m, n$ are nearly coprime. Questions of distributivity are also discussed.
(5.5.1) Lemma. If $q$ is a biword, then there exist words $w_{1}, \ldots, w_{d}$ such that $q$ is a bilaw in the non-nilpotent critical bigroup $G \varepsilon \xlongequal{A} 0 \triangleq$ if and only if $W_{1}, \ldots, W_{d}$ are laws in (the group) G. Conversely, if $w$ is a word, then there exists a biword $q^{\prime}$ such that $w$ is a law in the carrier of the bigroup $H$ if and only if $q^{\prime}$ is a bilaw in $\underline{H}$.

Proof. We may assume the biword $q$ written, modulo the bilaws of $A$ ㅇ, in one of the forms

$$
y_{1}^{\alpha}, \quad z_{1}^{\beta}, \prod_{i=1}^{t}\left[y_{1}, z_{1}^{\lambda_{i 1}}, \ldots, z_{r}^{\lambda_{i r}}{ }^{\alpha_{i}}\right.
$$

by (2.2.3). The words

$$
\left[x_{1}, x_{2}\right]^{\alpha},\left[x_{1}, x_{2}, x_{3}^{\beta}\right], \prod_{i=1}^{t}\left[x_{1}, x_{2}, x_{3}^{\lambda}, \ldots, x_{r+2}^{\lambda_{i r}}\right]_{i}^{\alpha}
$$

respectively, then do what we want. For the converse direction $q^{\prime}=w\left(y_{1} z_{1}, \ldots, y_{s} z_{s}\right)$ will serve.
(5.5.2) Lemma. There is a one-to-one inclusion preserving correspondence between the set of all subvarieties of $A A$ generated by non-nilpotent critical groups and the set of all sub-bivarieties of A 0 A generated by non-nilpotent critical bigroups; call it $\theta$ 。

Proof. From (3.3.4) and (5.1.3) there is a one-to-one correspondence between (isomorphism classes of) non-nilpotent critical groups in $A A$ and (isomorphism classes of) non-nilpotent
 is generated by non-nilpotent critical groups:

$$
\underset{\underline{V}}{V}=\operatorname{var}\left\{G_{i}: G_{i} \text { non-nilpotent, critical, } i \varepsilon I\right\}
$$

define

$$
\underset{\sim}{V}=\operatorname{svar}\left\{\underline{G}_{i}: i \varepsilon I\right\}
$$

The mapping $\underset{=}{V} \rightarrow \underset{\sim}{V}$ may easily be verified to be one-to-one and onto, using (5.5.1).
(5.5.3) Theorem. The variety $A A_{n}(A, A)$ has descending chain condition on subvarieties if and only if for all $p^{\beta} \ln \left(p^{\alpha} \mid m\right),{ }_{\equiv=}^{A A} B$ ( ${ }_{p} \underset{\alpha}{\alpha} \underset{=}{\text { A }}$ does.

Proof. Let ${ }_{=1}^{=}=\underline{V}_{2} \geq \ldots$ be a descending chain in $\Lambda\left({\underset{A A}{A}}^{=}\right)$. We may write

$$
\underline{\underline{V}}_{i}=\underline{V}_{i}^{\prime} v \underline{\underline{V}}_{i}^{i i}
$$

where $\underline{V}_{i}^{\prime}$ is generated by the nilpotent critical groups in $\underline{V}_{i}$ and $\underline{V}_{i}^{i n}$ by the non-nilpotent critical groups in $\underline{V}_{i}$. Clearly $\underline{V}_{1}^{2} \geq V_{2}^{i} \geq$ ... is a descending chain, which, by virtue of (5.5.2) and (4.0.1), breaks off. Hence $\underline{V}_{1} \geq \underline{V}_{2} \geq \ldots$ breaks off if and only if $\underline{V}_{1}^{\prime} \geq \underline{V}_{2}^{\prime}$ \#... breaks off. Since

$$
V_{1}^{\prime} \leq v\left\{\underset{p_{i}}{\{A A} \beta_{i}: n=p_{1}^{\beta_{1}} \ldots p_{t}^{\beta_{t}}, \quad 1 \leq i \leq t\right\}
$$

the theorem follows from (2.1.2).

Now ${\underset{M}{m}}_{\underline{A}}^{=}=v\left\{{\underset{p}{A}}_{A}^{A} A: p^{\alpha}| | m\right\}$ by 21.23 in [3], and therefore (2.1.2) completes the proof. -
(5.5.4) Corollary. $A A_{n}$ has descending chain condition on subvarieties if and only if for primes $p \mid n$ the chains ${\underset{p}{A A}}_{=}^{A_{p} \geq V_{1}}$ $\geq \underline{V}_{2}=\ldots$ with $\underline{\underline{V}}_{1} \sigma=\underline{\underline{V}}_{i} \sigma$ for $i \varepsilon\{1,2, \ldots\}$ break off.
A A has descending chain condition on subvarieties if for primes $p / n$ the chains ${\underset{p}{p}}^{A}=\stackrel{A}{=} \underline{V}_{1} \supseteq \stackrel{V}{V}_{2} \supseteq \ldots$ with $\stackrel{V}{V}_{1} \sigma=\underline{V}_{i} \sigma, \quad i=1,2, \ldots$ break off. (The definition of $\sigma$ is on p .36 ).

Proof. This follows from (1.6.5). Of course as noted in the Introduction, Cohen [16] has proved descending chain condition for all metabelian varieties: but it is perhaps worth noting that our methods are strong enough to yield such reduction theorems.

We turn our attention now to classification results. Theorem 5.2.7 can be modified in the following way.
(5.5.5) Theorem. $\Lambda\left({\underset{\underline{E}}{\mathcal{A}}}_{\alpha}{\underset{\underline{\underline{A}}}{p}}^{\beta_{N}}\right)$ can be embedded sub-directly into the lattice
where $s$ is the number of divisors $I=t_{1}, t_{2}, \ldots, t_{s}$ of $N$. Indeed there exist lattice homomorphisms $\xi_{0}: \Lambda\left({\underset{p}{A}}_{\mathcal{A}_{\alpha}}^{\underline{\underline{A}}_{p}} \beta_{N}\right) \rightarrow \Lambda({\underset{\underline{\underline{A}}}{N}})$,


i) $\quad t_{i} \mid t_{j}$ implies $V \underline{V} \xi_{j} \leq \underline{\underline{V}} \xi_{i}, \quad 2 \leq i, j \leq s$,
ii) $\quad \underline{\underline{\mathrm{V}} \xi_{i} \leq \underline{\mathrm{V}} \xi_{1} \sigma, \quad 2 \leq i \leq s, ~}$
iii)

$$
\underline{=} \xi_{0}=\underline{E}_{t_{i}} \text { implies } \quad \underline{=} \xi_{j}=E \circ \underline{E}, t_{j} \dagger t_{i} ; 2 \leq j \leq s
$$

Proof. We may write

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \underline{\underline{V} \xi}=\operatorname{var}\{G \varepsilon \underline{\underline{V}}: G \text { critical, non-nilpotent }\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

The set of subvarieties of ${ }_{\mathrm{p}}^{\mathrm{A}} \alpha{ }_{\mathrm{p}}^{\mathrm{A}} \beta_{\mathrm{N}}$ generated by non-nilpotent
 lattice under the inherited inclusion order. Define $\xi_{i}=\xi \theta \lambda_{i}$ (where $\lambda_{i}$ is defined in 5.2.7), $2 \leq i \leq s$.

It follows from a result of Kovács and Newman ((1.12) in [5]) and one of Higman (51.1 in [3]), that $\xi_{0}, \xi_{1}, \xi$ are lattice homomorphisms: also, in the appropriate sense, $\theta$ is a homomorphism (see (5.5.2)). Hence the $\xi_{i}$ are lattice homomorphisms. Moreover

$$
\underline{\underline{V}}=\underline{\underline{V}} \xi_{0} \vee \underline{\underline{V} \xi} 1 \vee \underline{\underline{V} \xi}
$$

and therefore, using (5.5.2) and (5.2.7) again, $\underline{\underline{V}}$ is determined uniquely by $\left\{\underline{\underline{V}} \xi_{i}\right.$. $\left.i=0, \ldots, s\right\}$. That the $\xi_{i}$ have the properties (i), (ii), (iii) is obvious from their construction and from (5.2.7).

We have the following result similar to (5.2.9), proved by using again
[5] and
51.1 in
[3].
(5.5.6) Theorem. If $m, n>0, m=p_{1}^{\alpha} \ldots p_{r}^{\alpha}$ for distinct primes $p_{1}, \ldots, p_{r}$, then $\Lambda\left(A_{m} A_{n}\right)$ is a sub-direct product of $\Lambda\left(\underset{=}{A} \alpha_{i} A_{n}\right)$, i $\varepsilon\{1, \ldots, r\}$ according to homomorphisms $\eta_{i}: \Lambda\left(A_{=m}^{A_{n}}\right)$ $p_{i}$ $\rightarrow \Lambda\left(\underset{p_{i}}{\mathrm{p}_{i}}{ }_{\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{n}}}\right)$ defined by

$$
\underline{\underline{V} \eta_{i}}=\underset{\underline{V}}{\underline{V}} \underset{P_{i}}{A} \alpha_{i}^{A} A_{\mathrm{n}},
$$

for $\underline{\underline{V}} \subseteq \underbrace{}_{-m} A_{n}$.
(5.5.7) Corollary. If $\underline{\underline{V}} \subseteq \mathcal{A}_{=\mathrm{m}} A_{\mathrm{n}}$, then $\Lambda(\underline{\underline{V}})$ is distributive if and only if for each $p_{i} \mid m, \Lambda(\underline{\underline{V}}) \eta_{i} \xi_{j}$ is distributive, where $\xi_{j}$ is defined for each $i$ as in (5.5.5)
(5.5.8) Corollary. If $m, n$ are nearly coprime, then $\Lambda\left(A_{m} A_{n}\right)$ is distributive.
(5.5.9) Corollary. Let $\underline{\underline{V}}$ be a variety of metabelian p-groups of bounded exponent in which $p$-groups have class at most $c_{p}$. If $c_{p}=p$ when $p \leq 3$ and $c_{p}=p-1$ when $p>3$, then $\Lambda(\underline{\underline{V}})$ is distributive.
 consists of groups whose Sylow p-subgroups have class at most $p+1$, then $\Lambda(\underline{\underline{W}})$ is not distributive.

Proofs. The proof of (5.5.8) uses (5.5.7), (5.3.13), (5.2.6) and M.F. Newman's unpublished result that $\left.\Lambda\left({\underset{\mathrm{E}}{\mathrm{A}}}^{\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{p}}}\right)\right)$ is distributive. To prove (5.5.9), use (5.5.7), (5.4.4) and Jonson [11], Weichsel [12] (or Brisley [7]), (5.4.6) and (5.2.6).

Finally we take up the possibility of getting a classification result along the lines of (5.2.11), and prove the following result.

 $\Delta$ of the set of divisors of $N$ and to each $\delta \varepsilon \Delta$ a subvariety
 $\min \left(\alpha, \exp \underline{=}_{\delta}\right)$ such that

ii) $\quad \underline{\underline{U}}_{\delta} \subseteq \underline{\underline{V}}_{1}, \quad{ }_{=}^{A} \subseteq \underline{V}_{0}$; and $\delta_{0} \mid \delta$ implies $\underline{\underline{U}}_{\delta} \subseteq \underline{=}_{\delta}^{\mathrm{U}}$ and
$\alpha(\delta) \leq \alpha\left(\delta_{0}\right)$,
iii) $\quad \underline{=}_{\delta} \sigma$ and $\alpha(\delta)$ are unique.

Proof. For each $\delta \mid \mathbb{N}, \delta>1$, write

$$
\underline{\underline{V}}_{\delta}=\operatorname{var}\{G \varepsilon \underline{\underline{V}}: G \text { critical, non-nilpotent, }|\mathrm{K}|=\delta\} ;
$$

and write $\Delta$ for the set of all such $\delta$ for which $\underline{\underline{V}}_{\delta} \neq \underset{\underline{E}}{ }$. Also put for $\delta \varepsilon \Delta$,

$$
\underline{U}_{\delta}=\operatorname{var}\{F(G): G \varepsilon \underline{\underline{V}} \text { critical, non-nilpotent, }|K|=\delta\}
$$

and $p^{\alpha(\delta)}=\max \left\{\exp G^{\prime}: G \varepsilon \underline{\underline{V}}\right.$ critical, non-nilpotent, $\left.|\mathrm{K}|=\delta\right\}$. We show that

$$
\underline{V}_{\delta}={\underset{=}{U}}^{A_{S}} \delta \wedge \stackrel{A}{A_{p}} \alpha(\delta) \stackrel{A}{A_{p N}} .
$$

Now $\underline{\underline{V}}_{\delta}$ is clearly contained in the right-hand side, and we must show

 hence we may assume $\bar{G}$ to be non-nilpotent.

$$
\text { Now let } \mathrm{w}=\mathrm{w}\left(\mathrm{x}_{1}, \ldots, \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{r}}\right) \text { be a law in } \underline{\mathrm{V}}_{\delta} \text {, that is a law }
$$

in the generating non-nilpotent critical groups of $\underline{V}_{\delta}$. call them $\left\{G_{i}: i \varepsilon I\right\}$ say. Now $w$ is a law in a non-nilpotent metabelian critical group $G$ if and only if $q=w\left(y_{1} z_{1}, \ldots, y_{r} z_{r}\right)$ is a bilaw in $G$. If $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{d}$ correspond to $q_{,} p, \delta$ as in Theorem 3.4 .4 then $q_{1}, \ldots q_{d}$ are bilaws in $E_{i}^{*}$, $i \varepsilon I$. Now from (5.3.11) each $q_{i}$ is equivalent,
 $y_{1}^{p^{\sigma}}, z_{1}^{\varepsilon},\left[y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{e}\right]^{p^{\tau}}(0 \leq \sigma, \tau \leq \alpha, \varepsilon=0,1,0<e)$. We must have $\alpha(\delta) \leq \sigma$, and therefore $y_{1}^{p}$ is a bilaw in $\overline{\mathrm{F}}$. If $z_{1}$ is a bilaw in all $\underline{F}_{\dot{i}}^{*}$ then the $F_{i}^{*}$ are abelian and $\underline{\underline{U}}_{\delta}$ is abelian: hence $z_{1}$ is a
bilaw in $\overline{\mathcal{F}}$. In the case of $\left[y_{1}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{e}\right]^{p^{\tau}}$ we note that, from (5.4.1), it is a bilaw in $\underline{H} \varepsilon \underset{\underline{A}}{\underline{A}} \underset{\underline{\underline{A}}}{ }$ if and only if $\left[x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{e+1}\right]^{p^{\tau}}$ is a law in H. Hence since clearly $\overline{\mathrm{F}} \varepsilon \underline{\underline{U}}_{\delta}=\operatorname{var}\left\{\mathrm{F}_{\dot{i}}: i \varepsilon I\right\}$, $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{d}$ are all bilaws in $\overline{F^{\prime}}$, whence $q$ is a bilaw in $\bar{G}$ and thus w is a law in $\bar{G}$. We have proved, therefore, that

Now $\underline{\underline{V}}$ is generated by its critical groups, and therefore,

$$
\underline{\underline{V}}=\underline{\underline{V}}_{0} \vee \underline{\underline{V}}_{1} \vee v\left\{\underline{\underline{V}}_{\delta}: \delta \varepsilon \Delta\right\}
$$

and this disposes of (i). By construction $\alpha(\delta) \leq \min \left(\alpha, \exp \underline{\underline{U}}_{\delta}\right)$ and $\underline{\underline{U}}_{\delta} \sigma \varepsilon \Phi\left(\underline{\underline{p}}_{\mathrm{p}} \alpha^{\circ} \stackrel{A}{\mathrm{~A}}_{\mathrm{p}}\right), \underline{\underline{U}}_{\delta} \neq \underset{\underline{E}}{\mathrm{E}}$. Also if $G \varepsilon \underline{\underline{\mathrm{~V}}}, \quad \mathrm{G}$ critical, $|K|=\delta$ and $\delta_{0} \mid \delta$, consider the subgroup $G_{0}=F(G) K_{0}$, where $K_{0}$ is the subgroup of $K$ of order $\delta_{0}$. From 5.1.2 it follows that there exist critical bigroups $\underline{G}_{1}, \ldots, \underline{-G}_{W}$ such that $\left|K_{i}\right|=\delta_{0}$ and $\operatorname{svar}\left\{\underline{G}_{1}, \ldots\right.$, $\left.G_{W}\right\}=\operatorname{svar}\left\{\underline{G}_{0}\right\}$, and hence that $\operatorname{var}\left\{G_{1}, \ldots, G_{W}\right\}=\operatorname{var}\left\{G_{0}\right\}$ (from the second part of (5.5.1)). It follows that

$$
\operatorname{var}\left\{F\left(G_{1}\right), \ldots, F\left(G_{w}\right)\right\}=\operatorname{var}\{F(G)\}
$$

and therefore that $\underline{=}_{\delta} \leq \underline{=}_{\delta_{0}}{ }^{\prime} \alpha(\delta) \leq \alpha\left(\delta_{0}\right)$. This completes the existence part of the proof.

For the uniqueness, note that if $\underset{=}{V}$ has an expression
which satisfies the hypotheses of the theorem, then there exists $1 \neq \underline{P} \varepsilon{\underset{=}{\delta}}_{\gamma}^{\gamma} \sigma, \underline{P}$ critical. Hence by (5.1.2), (3.3.4) and (1.12) of [5] there exists a critical group $G$ with $|K|=\delta$ and $G \in \underline{U}_{\delta=\delta}^{A} \wedge$
 The converse is proved similarly. Finally, since $⿷^{\prime}(\delta) \leq \exp \underline{U}_{\delta}^{\prime}$, there exists the critical group $C\left(p^{\alpha^{\prime}(\delta)} \delta\right)$ of Cossey (Theorem 4.2.2 in [4]) which belongs to $\underline{=}$ and therefore to $\underline{=}_{\delta} \hat{A}_{\delta}$ A ${\underset{p}{A} \alpha(\delta)}_{I_{p N}}$; hence $\alpha^{\prime}(\delta) \leq \alpha(\delta)$. Similarly $\alpha(\delta) \leq \alpha^{\prime}(\delta)$, and also $\Delta=\Delta^{\prime}$, and this completes the proof.

The subvarieties of $\underset{p^{A}}{A}{ }_{p}^{A}$ have been classified by M.F. Newman and thus we have an elaborate, but complete story for $\stackrel{A}{=} \alpha_{p}^{A} p_{p N}$. By way of illustration, the lattice $\Lambda\left({\underset{N}{2}}_{2} A_{6}\right)$ has been drawn. Note that even in this simplest case, the expression (i) in (5.5.10) is not always unique: both the varieties $\stackrel{N}{N}_{2 \lambda-1} \wedge{\stackrel{A}{A_{2}}}_{2}^{\mathcal{A}_{2}}$ and $\underline{\underline{S}}_{\lambda}$ give rise to the same non-nilpotent critical groups, that is

$$
\left(\mathbb{N}_{2 \lambda-1} \wedge \underline{\underline{A}}_{2} \underline{\underline{A}}_{2}\right) \sigma=\underline{\underline{S}}_{\lambda} \sigma .
$$

(5.5.11) Corollary. If $m, n$ are nearly coprime, then (5.5.6) and (5.5.10) give a complete description of $\Lambda\left(A_{m} A_{n}\right)$.

## $\left(\underline{\underline{A}}_{2} \underline{\underline{N}}_{2} \wedge \stackrel{N_{7}}{7}\right)^{*}$

${ }^{\left(\hat{A}_{2} \hat{A}_{6}{ }_{6}\right)}$

$$
\left(\underline{\underline{A}}_{2} \underline{\underline{A}}_{2} \cap{ }^{\frac{N_{1}}{6}}\right)^{*}
$$

${ }^{\frac{s_{3}^{*}}{3}}$

$\stackrel{A}{2}_{2} \underline{A}_{2} \wedge{ }^{\mathrm{N}_{7}}$
$\stackrel{A}{2}_{2} \underline{A}_{2} \wedge{ }^{\mathrm{N}_{6}}$

$\underline{\underline{U}}^{*}=\underline{\underline{U A}}_{\underline{=}}^{3} \wedge \stackrel{A}{\underline{A}}_{2} \underline{\underline{A}}_{6}$
(5.5.12) Example. In general (5.5.10) is not true.

Consider the following bigroups:

$$
\begin{gathered}
W_{1}=C_{2} \text { wr }\left(C_{4} \times C_{2}\right), W_{2}=C_{2} \text { wr }\left(C_{4} \times C_{2} \times C_{2}\right) /\left(C_{2} \text { wr }\left(C_{4} \times C_{2} \times C_{2}\right)\right)(6) \\
W_{3}=C_{2} w r\left(C_{4} \times C_{4}\right) /\left(C_{2} \text { wr } C_{4} \times C_{4}\right)(6):
\end{gathered}
$$

It is tedious, though not difficult, to verify that $W_{1}, W_{2}, W_{3}$ generate the same variety qua groups; indeed any bigroup in ${\underset{A}{A}}_{A_{2}} 0 \stackrel{A_{4}}{=}$ which does not satisfy the bilaw $\left[y_{1}, 3 z_{1}, z_{2}\right]$ and has class 5 exactly, generates the variety $\stackrel{A}{=}_{2} \stackrel{A}{=}_{4} \wedge \stackrel{N}{=}_{5}$ qua group. However $W_{1}$ has the bilaws

$$
\left[y_{1}, 2 z_{1}, 2 z_{2}\right],\left[y_{1}, 2 z_{1}, z_{2}, z_{3}\right]\left[y_{1}, z_{1}, 2 z_{2}, z_{3}\right]\left[y_{1}, z_{1}, z_{2}, 2 z_{3}\right]
$$

$W_{2}$ has the first, but not the second, and $W_{3}$ has neither. Now $W_{2}, W_{3}$ may not be critical bigroups (though $\mathrm{W}_{1}$ is) but we can replace them by a set of critical bigroups generating the same bivariety. It is clear, therefore, that if $G$ is critical and non-nilpotent, with $\underline{F}^{*} \cong W_{1}($ by $(5.1 .2))$ and $|K|=3$ say then

$$
\operatorname{var} G<\left(\operatorname{var} W_{1}\right) \stackrel{A}{=}_{3} \wedge \stackrel{A}{=}_{2} A_{12}
$$

Indeed var $G$ is not even maximal in the right-hand side. Moreover if we write $\underline{\underline{V}}_{1}=\operatorname{var} W_{1}=\operatorname{var}{\underset{\underline{A}}{3}}^{(G),} \underline{\underline{V}}_{2}=\operatorname{var}{\underset{\underline{A}}{3}}^{A_{2}}(G)$ and $\underline{V}_{3}=\operatorname{var} A_{3}{\underset{=}{A}}_{2}{\underset{N}{2}}^{(G)}$ then it is clear on examining the bigroups ${ }_{W}, W_{2}, W_{3}$, that $\operatorname{var} G$ is at best second maximal in

$$
\underline{\underline{V}}_{1} \underline{A}_{3} \wedge \stackrel{V}{V}_{2} \underline{\underline{A}}_{6} \wedge \underline{V}_{3} \stackrel{A}{12}_{12}
$$

## REFERENCES

[1] Eugene Schenkman. The splitting of certain solvable groups. Proc.Amer.Math.Soc. 6(1955), 286-290.
[2] Graham Higman. Complementation of abelian normal subgroups. Pub1.Math.Deb. 4 (1956), 455-458.
[3] Hanna Neumann. Varieties of Groups. Ergebnisse der Mathematik, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1967.
[4] P.J. Cossey. On varieties of A-groups. Thesis, A.N.U., 1966.
[5] L.G. Kovács and M.F. Newman. On critical groups. J.Aust. Math.Soc. ${ }^{6}(1966)$, 237-250.
[6] A.H. Clifford and G.B. Preston. The Algebraic Theory of Semigroups, Vol.I. Amer.Math.Soc. 1961.
[7] Warren Brisley. On varieties of metabelian p-groups and their laws. J.Aust.Math.Soc. 7(1967), 64-80.
[8] P. Hall. On the finiteness of certain soluble groups. Proc.Lond.Math.Soc. (3) $\underline{9}^{(1959), ~ 593-622 . ~}$

Identical relations in finite soluble groups. Quart.J.Math. 15(1964), 131-148.
[10] G. Bamslag. Wreath products and p-groups. Proc.Camb.Phil. Soc. 55(1959), 224-231.
[11] Bjarni Jónsson. Varieties of groups of nilpotency 3. Submitted to J.Aust.Math.Soc.
[12] Paul M. Weichsel. On metabelian p-groups. J.Aust.Math. Soc. ㄱ(1967), 55-63.
[13] Hans Liebeck. Concerning nilpotent wreath products. Proc.Camb.Phil.Soc. 58(1962), 443-451.
[14] M. F. Newman. Unpublished.
[15] IH. F. Newman. Unpublished.
[16] D.E. Cohen. On the laws of a metabelian variety. J.Algebra 5(1967), 267-273.
[17] R.C. Lyndon. Two notes on nilpotent groups. Proc.Amer. Math.Soc. 3(1952), 579-583.
[18] Sheila Oates and M.B. Powell. Identical relations in finite groups. J.Algebra 1(1964), 11-39.
P. Hall. Finiteness conditions for soluble groups. Proc.Lond.Math.Soc. (3) 4(1.954), 417-436.
B. H. Neumann.

Special Topics in Algebra: Universal Algebra,
Courant Institute of Mathematical Sciences Notes, 1962.
[22] Günter Pickert. Zur Ubertragung der Kettensätze. Math.
Annalen 121(1949-50), 100-102.
[23] Graham Higman. Representations of general linear groups and varieties of p-groups. Proc. Internat. Conf.

Theory of Groups, Aust. Nat. Univ. Canberra, August 1965, Gordon and Breach, New York, 1967.

